

## DTDevices

Generated by Doxygen 1.8.3.1

Thu Feb 28 2013 09:44:13



# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Deprecated List</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Module Documentation</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	Library Error Codes	3
2.1.1	Detailed Description	6
2.1.2	Macro Definition Documentation	7
2.1.2.1	DT_EBUSY	7
2.1.2.2	DT_ECLOSE	7
2.1.2.3	DT_ECRC	7
2.1.2.4	DT_ECREATE	7
2.1.2.5	DT_EDEVICE	7
2.1.2.6	DT_EEPROM	7
2.1.2.7	DT_EFLASH	7
2.1.2.8	DT_EGENERAL	7
2.1.2.9	DT_EINVALID_CMD	7
2.1.2.10	DT_EIO	7
2.1.2.11	DT_EMEMORY	7
2.1.2.12	DT_EMSR_ECARD	7
2.1.2.13	DT_EMSR_EHARDWARE	8
2.1.2.14	DT_EMSR_EINVALID_COMMAND	8
2.1.2.15	DT_EMSR_EINVALID_LENGTH	8
2.1.2.16	DT_EMSR_EINVALID_SIGNATURE	8
2.1.2.17	DT_EMSR_ENO_DATA	8
2.1.2.18	DT_EMSR_ENO_PERMISSION	8
2.1.2.19	DT_EMSR_ENO_RESPONSE	8
2.1.2.20	DT_EMSR_ESYNTAX	8
2.1.2.21	DT_EMSR_ETAMPERED	8
2.1.2.22	DT_ENOEXIST	8
2.1.2.23	DT_ENOIMPLEMENTED	8
2.1.2.24	DT_ENOMORE	8
2.1.2.25	DT_ENONE	9

2.1.2.26	DT_ENOSUPPORTED	9
2.1.2.27	DT_ENOT_EXIST_OBJECT	9
2.1.2.28	DT_EOPEN	9
2.1.2.29	DT_EPARAM	9
2.1.2.30	DT_ETIMEOUT	9
2.1.2.31	DT_MIFARE_EACCESS	9
2.1.2.32	DT_MIFARE_EAUTHENTICATION	9
2.1.2.33	DT_MIFARE_EBASE	9
2.1.2.34	DT_MIFARE_EBIT	9
2.1.2.35	DT_MIFARE_ECODE	9
2.1.2.36	DT_MIFARE_ECOLLISION	9
2.1.2.37	DT_MIFARE_ECRC	10
2.1.2.38	DT_MIFARE_EEPROM	10
2.1.2.39	DT_MIFARE_EFIFO	10
2.1.2.40	DT_MIFARE_EFRAME	10
2.1.2.41	DT_MIFARE_EGENERIC	10
2.1.2.42	DT_MIFARE_EKEY	10
2.1.2.43	DT_MIFARE_EPARITY	10
2.1.2.44	DT_MIFARE_ETIMEOUT	10
2.1.2.45	DT_MIFARE_EVALUE	10
2.1.2.46	DT_PPAD_ENO_TMK	10
2.2	Delegate Notifications	11
2.2.1	Detailed Description	12
2.2.2	Function Documentation	12
2.2.2.1	barcodeData:isotype:	12
2.2.2.2	barcodeData:type:	12
2.2.2.3	bluetoothDeviceDiscovered:name:	12
2.2.2.4	bluetoothDiscoverComplete:	12
2.2.2.5	connectionState:	12
2.2.2.6	deviceButtonPressed:	13
2.2.2.7	deviceButtonReleased:	13
2.2.2.8	deviceFeatureSupported:value:	13
2.2.2.9	firmwareUpdateProgress:percent:	13
2.2.2.10	magneticCardData:track2:track3:	14
2.2.2.11	magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:	14
2.2.2.12	magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:track1masked:track2masked:track3:	15
2.2.2.13	magneticCardEncryptedRawData:data:	16
2.2.2.14	magneticCardRawData:	17
2.2.2.15	magneticJISCardData:	17
2.2.2.16	paperStatus:	17

2.2.2.17	rfCardDetected:info:	17
2.2.2.18	rfCardRemoved:	17
2.3	General functions	18
2.3.1	Detailed Description	18
2.3.2	Function Documentation	18
2.3.2.1	addDelegate:	18
2.3.2.2	connect	19
2.3.2.3	getBatteryCapacity:voltage:error:	19
2.3.2.4	getCharging:error:	19
2.3.2.5	getFirmwareFileInformation:error:	19
2.3.2.6	getSupportedFeature:error:	20
2.3.2.7	playSound:beepData:length:error:	20
2.3.2.8	removeDelegate:	21
2.3.2.9	setActiveDeviceType:error:	21
2.3.2.10	setCharging:error:	21
2.3.2.11	sharedDevice	22
2.3.2.12	updateFirmwareData:error:	22
2.4	Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted)	23
2.4.1	Detailed Description	23
2.4.2	Function Documentation	23
2.4.2.1	msDisable:	23
2.4.2.2	msEnable:	23
2.4.2.3	msProcessFinancialCard:track2:	23
2.4.2.4	msSetCardDataMode:error:	24
2.5	Barcode Reader Functions	25
2.5.1	Detailed Description	25
2.5.2	Function Documentation	26
2.5.2.1	barcodeCodeGetParam:value:error:	26
2.5.2.2	barcodeCodeSetParam:value:error:	26
2.5.2.3	barcodeCodeUpdateFirmware:data:error:	26
2.5.2.4	barcodeEngineResetToDefaults:	27
2.5.2.5	barcodeGetScanButtonMode:error:	27
2.5.2.6	barcodeGetScanMode:error:	27
2.5.2.7	barcodeGetTypeMode:error:	28
2.5.2.8	barcodeIntermecSetInitData:error:	28
2.5.2.9	barcodeOpticonGetIdent:	28
2.5.2.10	barcodeOpticonSetInitString:error:	29
2.5.2.11	barcodeOpticonSetParams:saveToFlash:error:	29
2.5.2.12	barcodeOpticonUpdateFirmware:bootLoader:error:	29
2.5.2.13	barcodeSetScanBeep:volume:beepData:length:error:	30

2.5.2.14	barcodeSetScanButtonMode:error:	30
2.5.2.15	barcodeSetScanMode:error:	31
2.5.2.16	barcodeSetTypeMode:error:	31
2.5.2.17	barcodeStartScan:	31
2.5.2.18	barcodeStopScan:	32
2.5.2.19	barcodeType2Text:	32
2.6	Bluetooth Functions	33
2.6.1	Detailed Description	34
2.6.2	Function Documentation	34
2.6.2.1	btConnect:pin:error:	34
2.6.2.2	btConnectSupportedDevice:pin:error:	34
2.6.2.3	btDisconnect:error:	34
2.6.2.4	btDiscoverDevices:maxTime:codTypes:error:	35
2.6.2.5	btDiscoverDevicesInBackground:maxTime:codTypes:error:	35
2.6.2.6	btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:	36
2.6.2.7	btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:maxTime:error:	36
2.6.2.8	btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:	36
2.6.2.9	btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:maxTime:error:	37
2.6.2.10	btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground:maxTime:filter:error:	37
2.6.2.11	btEnableWriteCaching:error:	38
2.6.2.12	btGetDeviceName:error:	38
2.6.2.13	btRead:length:timeout:error:	38
2.6.2.14	btReadLine:error:	39
2.6.2.15	btSetDataNotificationMaxTime:maxLength:sequenceData:error:	39
2.6.2.16	btWrite:error:	39
2.6.2.17	btWrite:length:error:	40
2.6.3	Properties	40
2.6.3.1	btInputStream	40
2.6.3.2	btOutputStream	40
2.7	External Serial Port Functions	41
2.7.1	Detailed Description	41
2.7.2	Function Documentation	42
2.7.2.1	extCloseSerialPort:error:	42
2.7.2.2	extOpenSerialPort:baudRate:parity:dataBits:stopBits:flowControl:error:	42
2.7.2.3	extReadSerialPort:length:timeout:error:	42
2.7.2.4	extWriteSerialPort:data:error:	42
2.8	TCP/IP Functions	44
2.8.1	Detailed Description	44
2.8.2	Function Documentation	44
2.8.2.1	tcpConnectSupportedDevice:error:	44

2.8.2.2	tcpDisconnect:error:	44
2.9	Cryptographic & Security Functions	46
2.9.1	Detailed Description	46
2.9.2	Function Documentation	47
2.9.2.1	cryptoAuthenticateDevice:error:	47
2.9.2.2	cryptoAuthenticateHost:error:	47
2.9.2.3	cryptoGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:	48
2.9.2.4	cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice:error:	48
2.9.2.5	cryptoRawAuthenticateHost:error:	49
2.9.2.6	cryptoRawGenerateRandomData:	49
2.9.2.7	cryptoRawSetKey:encryptedData:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:	49
2.9.2.8	cryptoSetKey:key:oldKey:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:	50
2.10	Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions	52
2.10.1	Detailed Description	53
2.10.2	Macro Definition Documentation	53
2.10.2.1	LN_EMSR_ECARD	53
2.10.2.2	LN_EMSR_EHARDWARE	53
2.10.2.3	LN_EMSR_EINVALID_COMMAND	53
2.10.2.4	LN_EMSR_EINVALID_LENGTH	53
2.10.2.5	LN_EMSR_EINVALID_SIGNATURE	53
2.10.2.6	LN_EMSR_ENO_DATA	53
2.10.2.7	LN_EMSR_ENO_PERMISSION	53
2.10.2.8	LN_EMSR_ENO_RESPONSE	53
2.10.2.9	LN_EMSR_ESYNTAX	54
2.10.2.10	LN_EMSR_ETAMPERED	54
2.10.3	Function Documentation	54
2.10.3.1	emsrConfigMaskedDataShowExpiration:unmaskedDigitsAtStart:unmasked-DigitsAtEnd:error:	54
2.10.3.2	emsrGetDeviceModel:	54
2.10.3.3	emsrGetDUKPTSerial:	54
2.10.3.4	emsrGetFirmwareInformation:error:	55
2.10.3.5	emsrGetFirmwareVersion:error:	55
2.10.3.6	emsrGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:	55
2.10.3.7	emsrGetSecurityVersion:error:	56
2.10.3.8	emsrGetSerialNumber:	56
2.10.3.9	emsrGetSupportedEncryptions:	56
2.10.3.10	emsrIsTampered:error:	57
2.10.3.11	emsrLoadInitialKey:error:	57
2.10.3.12	emsrLoadKey:error:	57
2.10.3.13	emsrSetEncryption:params:error:	58

2.10.3.14 emsrUpdateFirmware:error:	58
2.11 RF Reader Functions	60
2.11.1 Detailed Description	61
2.11.2 Macro Definition Documentation	61
2.11.2.1 CARD_SUPPORT_JEWEL	61
2.11.2.2 CARD_SUPPORT_NFC	61
2.11.2.3 CARD_SUPPORT_TYPE_B	61
2.11.3 Function Documentation	62
2.11.3.1 felicaRead:startBlock:length:error:	62
2.11.3.2 felicaSmartTagClearScreen:error:	62
2.11.3.3 felicaSmartTagDisplayLayout:layout:error:	62
2.11.3.4 felicaSmartTagDrawImage:image:topLeftX:topLeftY:drawMode:layout:error:	62
2.11.3.5 felicaSmartTagGetBatteryStatus:status:error:	63
2.11.3.6 felicaSmartTagRead:address:length:error:	63
2.11.3.7 felicaSmartTagSaveLayout:layout:error:	64
2.11.3.8 felicaSmartTagWaitCompletion:error:	64
2.11.3.9 felicaSmartTagWrite:address:data:error:	64
2.11.3.10 felicaWrite:startBlock:data:error:	64
2.11.3.11 iso15693GetBlocksSecurityStatus:startBlock:nBlocks:error:	65
2.11.3.12 iso15693LockAFI:error:	65
2.11.3.13 iso15693LockBlock:block:error:	65
2.11.3.14 iso15693LockDSFID:error:	66
2.11.3.15 iso15693Read:startBlock:length:error:	66
2.11.3.16 iso15693Write:startBlock:data:error:	66
2.11.3.17 iso15693WriteAFI:afi:error:	67
2.11.3.18 iso15693WriteDSFID:dsfid:error:	67
2.11.3.19 mfAuthByKey:type:address:key:error:	67
2.11.3.20 mfAuthByStoredKey:type:address:keyIndex:error:	67
2.11.3.21 mfRead:address:length:error:	68
2.11.3.22 mfStoreKeyIndex:type:key:error:	68
2.11.3.23 mfUlcAuthByKey:key:error:	68
2.11.3.24 mfUlcSetKey:key:error:	69
2.11.3.25 mfWrite:address:data:error:	69
2.11.3.26 rfClose:	69
2.11.3.27 rflnit:error:	70
2.11.3.28 rfRemoveCard:error:	70
2.12 SmartCard Functions	71
2.12.1 Detailed Description	71
2.12.2 Function Documentation	71
2.12.2.1 scCAPDU:apdu:error:	71



2.12.2.2	scCardPowerOff:error:	71
2.12.2.3	scCardPowerOn:error:	72
2.12.2.4	scClose:error:	72
2.12.2.5	scInit:error:	72
2.12.2.6	sclsCardPresent:error:	73
2.13	Pinpad functions	74
2.13.1	Detailed Description	74
2.13.2	Function Documentation	74
2.13.2.1	pinGetPINBlockUsingDUKPT:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:	74
2.13.2.2	ppadCancelPINEntry:	74
2.13.2.3	ppadGetKeyInfo:error:	75
2.13.2.4	ppadGetPINBlockUsingFixedKey:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:	75
2.13.2.5	ppadMagneticCardEntry:timeout:error:	75
2.13.2.6	ppadSetButtonCaption:caption:error:	76
2.13.2.7	ppadStartPINEntry:startY:timeout:echoChar:message:error:	76
2.14	EMV Kernel	77
2.14.1	Detailed Description	78
2.15	EMV Operation Workflow	87
2.16	EMV TAGs	95
2.16.1	Detailed Description	106
2.17	EMV Status Codes	107
2.17.1	Detailed Description	108
2.18	Transaction Start	109
2.18.1	Detailed Description	109
2.18.2	Function Documentation	109
2.18.2.1	emvATRValidation:warmReset:error:	109
2.18.2.2	emvGetCommonAppList:error:	109
2.18.2.3	emvLoadAppList:selectionMethod:includeBlockedAIDs:error:	110
2.19	Transaction Processing	111
2.19.1	Detailed Description	111
2.19.2	Function Documentation	112
2.19.2.1	emvAuthentication:error:	112
2.19.2.2	emvGenerateCertificate:risk:error:	112
2.19.2.3	emvGetAuthenticationMethod:	113
2.19.2.4	emvInitialAppProcessing:error:	114
2.19.2.5	emvMakeDefaultDecision:	114
2.19.2.6	emvMakeTransactionDecision:	115
2.19.2.7	emvProcessRestrictions:	115
2.19.2.8	emvReadAppData:error:	115
2.19.2.9	emvSetAuthenticationResult:error:	116

2.19.2.10	emvTerminalRisk:error:	117
2.19.2.11	emvVerifyPinOffline:	117
2.20	Issuer Authentication	119
2.20.1	Detailed Description	119
2.20.2	Function Documentation	119
2.20.2.1	emvAuthenticateIssuer:	119
2.20.2.2	emvScriptProcessing:error:	119
2.21	General Commands	121
2.21.1	Detailed Description	121
2.21.2	Function Documentation	121
2.21.2.1	emvCheckTSIByte:bit:error:	121
2.21.2.2	emvCheckTVRByte:bit:error:	121
2.21.2.3	emvRemovePublicKey:RID:error:	122
2.21.2.4	emvUpdateTSIByte:bit:value:error:	122
2.21.2.5	emvUpdateTVRByte:bit:value:error:	123
2.22	Data Access	124
2.22.1	Detailed Description	124
2.22.2	Function Documentation	124
2.22.2.1	emvGetDataAsBinary:error:	124
2.22.2.2	emvGetDataAsString:error:	125
2.22.2.3	emvGetDataDetails:tagType:maxLength:currentLen:error:	125
2.22.2.4	emvSetBypassMode:error:	126
2.22.2.5	emvSetDataAsBinary:data:error:	126
2.22.2.6	emvSetDataAsString:data:error:	127
2.23	User Interface Functions	128
2.23.1	Detailed Description	128
2.23.2	Function Documentation	128
2.23.2.1	uiControlLEDsWithBitMask:error:	128
2.23.2.2	uiDisplayImage:topLeftY:image:error:	129
2.23.2.3	uiDrawText:topLeftX:topLeftY:font:error:	129
2.23.2.4	uiEnableVibrationForTime:error:	129
2.23.2.5	uiFillRectangle:topLeftY:width:height:color:error:	130
2.23.2.6	uiGetScreenInfoWidth:height:colorMode:error:	130
2.23.2.7	uiPutPixel:y:color:error:	130
2.23.2.8	uiSetContrast:error:	131
2.23.2.9	uiStartAnimation:topLeftX:topLeftY:animated:error:	131
2.23.2.10	uiStopAnimation:error:	131
2.24	Printing functions	132
2.24.1	Detailed Description	133
2.24.2	Function Documentation	133

2.24.2.1	prnCalibrateBlackMark:error:	133
2.24.2.2	prnFeedPaper:error:	133
2.24.2.3	prnFlushCache:	133
2.24.2.4	prnGetBlackMarkTreshold:error:	134
2.24.2.5	prnGetPrinterStatus:error:	134
2.24.2.6	prnLoadLogo:align:error:	134
2.24.2.7	prnPrintBarcode:barcode:error:	134
2.24.2.8	prnPrintDelimiter:error:	135
2.24.2.9	prnPrintImage:align:error:	135
2.24.2.10	prnPrintLogo:error:	135
2.24.2.11	prnPrintText:error:	136
2.24.2.12	prnPrintText:usingEncoding:error:	136
2.24.2.13	prnSelfTest:error:	137
2.24.2.14	prnSetBarcodeSettings:height:hriPosition:align:error:	138
2.24.2.15	prnSetBlackMarkTreshold:error:	138
2.24.2.16	prnSetDensity:error:	138
2.24.2.17	prnSetLeftMargin:error:	138
2.24.2.18	prnSetLineSpace:error:	139
2.24.2.19	prnTurnOff:	139
2.24.2.20	prnWaitPrintJob:error:	139
2.25	Printing Page Mode Functions	140
2.25.1	Detailed Description	140
2.25.2	Function Documentation	140
2.25.2.1	pageEnd:	140
2.25.2.2	pageFillRectangle:error:	140
2.25.2.3	pageFillRectangle:top:width:height:color:error:	141
2.25.2.4	pagePrint:	141
2.25.2.5	pageRectangleFrame:top:width:height:framewidth:color:error:	141
2.25.2.6	pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:error:	142
2.25.2.7	pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:orientation:error:	142
2.25.2.8	pageStart:	142
2.26	Printing Table Functions	143
2.26.1	Detailed Description	143
2.26.2	Function Documentation	143
2.26.2.1	tableAddCell:error:	143
2.26.2.2	tableAddCell:font:error:	144
2.26.2.3	tableAddCell:font:style:alignment:error:	144
2.26.2.4	tableAddCell:font:style:error:	144
2.26.2.5	tableAddColumn:	144
2.26.2.6	tableAddColumn:error:	145

2.26.2.7	tableAddColumn:style:alignment:error:	145
2.26.2.8	tableAddColumn:style:alignment:flags:error:	145
2.26.2.9	tableAddDelimiter:	146
2.26.2.10	tableCreate:	146
2.26.2.11	tableCreate:error:	146
2.26.2.12	tableIsSupported	146
2.26.2.13	tablePrint:	146
2.26.2.14	tableSetRowHeight:error:	147
<b>3</b>	<b>Class Documentation</b>	<b>149</b>
3.1	<DTDeviceDelegate> Protocol Reference	149
3.1.1	Detailed Description	150
3.2	DTDevices Class Reference	150
3.2.1	Detailed Description	160
3.2.2	Property Documentation	160
3.2.2.1	sdkVersion	160
3.3	DTEMVApplication Class Reference	160
3.3.1	Detailed Description	160
3.3.2	Property Documentation	160
3.3.2.1	matchCriteria	160
3.4	DTKeyInfo Class Reference	161
3.4.1	Detailed Description	161
3.4.2	Property Documentation	161
3.4.2.1	usage	161
3.5	DTRFCardInfo Class Reference	161
3.5.1	Detailed Description	162
<b>Index</b>		<b>162</b>

## Chapter 1

# Deprecated List

**Member** [\[DTDevices btDiscoverDevices:maxTime:codTypes:error:\]](#)

This function is not recommended to be called on the main thread, use `btDiscoverDevicesInBackground` instead

**Member** [\[DTDevices btGetDeviceName:error:\]](#)

This function complements the `btDiscoverDevices/btDiscoverPrinters` and as such is not recommended, use `btDiscoverDevicesInBackground` instead



## Chapter 2

# Module Documentation

### 2.1 Library Error Codes

Library error codes returned in the NSError objects.

#### Macros

- #define **Library\_Errors\_h**
- #define **DT\_ENONE** 0  
*Operation successful.*
- #define **DT\_EGENERAL** -1  
*General error / Unknown error.*
- #define **DT\_ECREATE** -2  
*Create error.*
- #define **DT\_EOPEN** -3  
*Open error.*
- #define **DT\_ECLOSE** -4  
*Close error.*
- #define **DT\_EBUSY** -5  
*Device or resource busy.*
- #define **DT\_ETIMEOUT** -6  
*Timeout expired.*
- #define **DT\_ENOSUPPORTED** -7  
*Unsupported method or operation.*
- #define **DT\_EMEMORY** -8  
*Memory allocation error.*
- #define **DT\_EPARAM** -9  
*Invalid parameter.*
- #define **DT\_EIO** -10  
*Input/Output error.*
- #define **DT\_ECRC** -11  
*CRC error.*
- #define **DT\_EFLASH** -12  
*Flash error.*
- #define **DT\_EEEPROM** -13  
*EEPROM error.*
- #define **DT\_EDEVICE** -14

- Device error.*

  - #define [DT\\_ENOIMPLEMENTED](#) -15
  - The operation is not implemented.*
  - #define [DT\\_ENOEXIST](#) -16
  - The device or resource does not exists.*
  - #define [DT\\_EINVALID\\_CMD](#) -17
  - Invalid command.*
  - #define [DT\\_ENOT\\_EXIST\\_OBJECT](#) -18
  - Not exist object.*
  - #define [DT\\_ENOMORE](#) -19
  - No more items.*
  - #define [DT\\_EFAILED](#) -20
  - Command Failed.*
  - #define [DT\\_EINVALID](#) -21
  - Invalid command.*
  - #define [DT\\_ENOT\\_REGISTERED](#) -22
  - Not registered.*
  - #define [DT\\_EPERMISSION\\_DENIED](#) -23
  - Permission denied.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#) -10000
  - Mifare operation successful.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_ETIMEOUT](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-1
  - Mifare timeout error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_ECOLLISION](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-2
  - Mifare collision error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EPARITY](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-3
  - Mifare parity error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EFRAME](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-4
  - Mifare frame error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_ECRC](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-5
  - Mifare CRC error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EFIFO](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-6
  - Mifare FIFO overflow.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EEEPROM](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-7
  - Mifare EEPROM error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EKEY](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-8
  - Mifare invalid key.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EGENERIC](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-9
  - Mifare generic error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EAUTHENTICATION](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-10
  - Mifare authentication error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_ECODE](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-11
  - Mifare code error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBIT](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-12
  - Mifare bit count error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EACCESS](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-13
  - Mifare access error.*
  - #define [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EVALUE](#) [DT\\_MIFARE\\_EBASE](#)-14
  - Mifare value error.*
  - #define [DT\\_EMSR\\_EBASE](#) -11000
  - EMS base value.*



- `#define DT_EMSR_EINVALID_COMMAND DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x01`  
*Encrypted magnetic head invalid command sent.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_ENO_PERMISSION DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x02`  
*Encrypted magnetic head no permission error.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_ECARD DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x03`  
*Encrypted magnetic head card error.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_ESYNTAX DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x04`  
*Encrypted magnetic head command syntax error.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_ENO_RESPONSE DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x05`  
*Encrypted magnetic head command no response from the magnetic chip.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_ENO_DATA DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x06`  
*Encrypted magnetic head no data available.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_EINVALID_LENGTH DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x14`  
*Encrypted magnetic head invalid data length.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_ETAMPERED DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x15`  
*Encrypted magnetic head is tampered.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_EINVALID_SIGNATURE DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x16`  
*Encrypted magnetic head invalid signature.*
- `#define DT_EMSR_EHARDWARE DT_EMSR_EBASE-0x17`  
*Encrypted magnetic head hardware failure.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EBASE -16500`  
*Pinpad base value.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EGENERAL DT_PPAD_EBASE-1`  
*Generic error.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_COMMAND DT_PPAD_EBASE-2`  
*Invalid command or subcommand code.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_PARAMETER DT_PPAD_EBASE-3`  
*Invalid parameter.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_ADDRESS DT_PPAD_EBASE-4`  
*Address is outside limits.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_VALUE DT_PPAD_EBASE-5`  
*Value is outside limits.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_LENGTH DT_PPAD_EBASE-6`  
*Length is outside limits.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_ENO_PERMISSION DT_PPAD_EBASE-7`  
*The action is not permitted in current state.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_ENO_DATA DT_PPAD_EBASE-8`  
*There is no data to be returned.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_ETIMEOUT DT_PPAD_EBASE-9`  
*Timeout occurred.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_KEY_NUMBER DT_PPAD_EBASE-10`  
*Invalid key number.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_KEY_ATTRIBUTES DT_PPAD_EBASE-11`  
*Invalid key attributes (usage)*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EINVALID_DEVICE DT_PPAD_EBASE-12`  
*Calling of non-existing device.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_ENOT_SUPPORTED DT_PPAD_EBASE-13`  
*(not used in this FW version)*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EPIN_LIMIT_EXCEEDED DT_PPAD_EBASE-14`  
*Pin entering limit exceed.*
- `#define DT_PPAD_EFLASH DT_PPAD_EBASE-15`

- Error in flash commands.*

  - #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EHARDWARE](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-16](#)
- Hardware error.*

  - #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_CRC](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-17](#)

*(not used in this FW version)*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_ECANCELLED](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-18](#)

*Operation cancelled.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_SIGNATURE](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-19](#)

*Invalid signature.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_HEADER](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-20](#)

*Invalid data in header.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_PASSWORD](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-21](#)

*Incorrent password.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_KEY\\_FORMAT](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-22](#)

*Invalid key format.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_ESCR](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-23](#)

*Error in smart card reader.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EHAL](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-24](#)

*Error code is returned from HAL functions.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_KEY](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-25](#)

*Invalid key (or missing)*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_PIN](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-26](#)

*The PIN length is <4 or > 12.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_REMAINDER](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-27](#)

*Issuer or ICC key invalid remainder length.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_ENOT\\_INITIALIZED](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-28](#)

*(no used in this FW version)*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_ELIMIT\\_REACHED](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-29](#)

*(no used in this FW version)*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EINVALID\\_SEQUENCE](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-30](#)

*(no used in this FW version)*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_ENOT\\_PERMITTED](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-31](#)

*The action is not permitted.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_ENO\\_TMK](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-32](#)

*TMK is not loaded.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EWRONG\\_KEY](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-33](#)

*Wrong key format.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EDUPLICATE\\_KEY](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-34](#)

*Duplicated key.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EKEYBOARD\\_GENERAL](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-35](#)

*General keyboard error.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EKEYBOARD\\_NOT\\_CALIBRATED](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-36](#)

*Keyboard not calibrated.*
- #define [DT\\_PPAD\\_EKEYBOARD\\_FAILURE](#) [DT\\_PPAD\\_EBASE-37](#)

*Keyboard failure.*

### 2.1.1 Detailed Description

Library error codes returned in the NSError objects.

## 2.1.2 Macro Definition Documentation

### 2.1.2.1 #define DT\_EBUSY -5

Device or resource busy.

### 2.1.2.2 #define DT\_ECLOSE -4

Close error.

### 2.1.2.3 #define DT\_ECRC -11

CRC error.

### 2.1.2.4 #define DT\_ECREATE -2

Create error.

### 2.1.2.5 #define DT\_EDEVICE -14

Device error.

### 2.1.2.6 #define DT\_EEPROM -13

EEPROM error.

### 2.1.2.7 #define DT\_EFLASH -12

Flash error.

### 2.1.2.8 #define DT\_EGENERAL -1

General error / Unknown error.

### 2.1.2.9 #define DT\_EINVALID.CMD -17

Invalid command.

### 2.1.2.10 #define DT\_EIO -10

Input/Output error.

### 2.1.2.11 #define DT\_EMEMORY -8

Memory allocation error.

### 2.1.2.12 #define DT\_EMSR\_ECARD DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x03

Encrypted magnetic head card error.

**2.1.2.13 #define DT\_EMSR\_EHARDWARE DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x17**

Encrypted magnetic head hardware failure.

**2.1.2.14 #define DT\_EMSR\_EINVALID\_COMMAND DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x01**

Encrypted magnetic head invalid command sent.

**2.1.2.15 #define DT\_EMSR\_EINVALID\_LENGTH DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x14**

Encrypted magnetic head invalid data length.

**2.1.2.16 #define DT\_EMSR\_EINVALID\_SIGNATURE DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x16**

Encrypted magnetic head invalid signature.

**2.1.2.17 #define DT\_EMSR\_ENO\_DATA DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x06**

Encrypted magnetic head no data available.

**2.1.2.18 #define DT\_EMSR\_ENO\_PERMISSION DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x02**

Encrypted magnetic head no permission error.

**2.1.2.19 #define DT\_EMSR\_ENO\_RESPONSE DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x05**

Encrypted magnetic head command no response from the magnetic chip.

**2.1.2.20 #define DT\_EMSR\_ESYNTAX DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x04**

Encrypted magnetic head command syntax error.

**2.1.2.21 #define DT\_EMSR\_ETAMPERED DT\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x15**

Encrypted magnetic head is tampered.

**2.1.2.22 #define DT\_ENOEXIST -16**

The device or resource does not exists.

**2.1.2.23 #define DT\_ENOIMPLEMENTED -15**

The operation is not implemented.

**2.1.2.24 #define DT\_ENOMORE -19**

No more items.

2.1.2.25 `#define DT_ENONE 0`

Operation successful.

2.1.2.26 `#define DT_ENOSUPPORTED -7`

Unsupported method or operation.

2.1.2.27 `#define DT_ENOT_EXIST_OBJECT -18`

Not exist object.

2.1.2.28 `#define DT_EOPEN -3`

Open error.

2.1.2.29 `#define DT_EPARAM -9`

Invalid parameter.

2.1.2.30 `#define DT_ETIMEOUT -6`

Timeout expired.

2.1.2.31 `#define DT_MIFARE_EACCESS DT_MIFARE_EBASE-13`

Mifare access error.

2.1.2.32 `#define DT_MIFARE_EAUTHENTICATION DT_MIFARE_EBASE-10`

Mifare authentication error.

2.1.2.33 `#define DT_MIFARE_EBASE -10000`

Mifare operation successful.

2.1.2.34 `#define DT_MIFARE_EBIT DT_MIFARE_EBASE-12`

Mifare bit count error.

2.1.2.35 `#define DT_MIFARE_ECODE DT_MIFARE_EBASE-11`

Mifare code error.

2.1.2.36 `#define DT_MIFARE_ECOLLISION DT_MIFARE_EBASE-2`

Mifare collision error.

2.1.2.37 `#define DT_MIFARE_ECRC DT_MIFARE_EBASE-5`

Mifare CRC error.

2.1.2.38 `#define DT_MIFARE_EEPROM DT_MIFARE_EBASE-7`

Mifare EEPROM error.

2.1.2.39 `#define DT_MIFARE_EFIFO DT_MIFARE_EBASE-6`

Mifare FIFO overflow.

2.1.2.40 `#define DT_MIFARE_EFRAME DT_MIFARE_EBASE-4`

Mifare frame error.

2.1.2.41 `#define DT_MIFARE_EGENERIC DT_MIFARE_EBASE-9`

Mifare generic error.

2.1.2.42 `#define DT_MIFARE_EKEY DT_MIFARE_EBASE-8`

Mifare invalid key.

2.1.2.43 `#define DT_MIFARE_EPARITY DT_MIFARE_EBASE-3`

Mifare parity error.

2.1.2.44 `#define DT_MIFARE_ETIMEOUT DT_MIFARE_EBASE-1`

Mifare timeout error.

2.1.2.45 `#define DT_MIFARE_EVALUE DT_MIFARE_EBASE-14`

Mifare value error.

2.1.2.46 `#define DT_PPAD_ENO_TMK DT_PPAD_EBASE-32`

TMK is not loaded.

The action cannot be executed

## 2.2 Delegate Notifications

Notifications sent by the sdk on various events - barcode scanned, magnetic card data, communication status, etc.

### Functions

- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::connectionState:`  
*Notifies about the current connection state.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::deviceButtonPressed:`  
*Notification sent when some of the device's buttons is pressed.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::deviceButtonReleased:`  
*Notification sent when some of the device's buttons is released.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::barcodeData:type:`  
*Notification sent when barcode is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::barcodeData:isotype:`  
*Notification sent when barcode is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::magneticCardData:track2:track3:`  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:`  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:track1masked:track2masked:track3:`  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::magneticCardRawData:`  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::magneticCardEncryptedRawData:data:`  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::firmwareUpdateProgress:percent:`  
*Notification sent when firmware update process advances.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::bluetoothDiscoverComplete:`  
*Notification sent when bluetooth discovery finds new bluetooth device.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::bluetoothDeviceDiscovered:name:`  
*Notification sent when bluetooth discovery finds new bluetooth device.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::bluetoothDeviceConnected:`
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::bluetoothDeviceDisconnected:`
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::magneticJISCardData:`  
*Notification sent when JIS I & II magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::rfCardDetected:info:`  
*Notification sent when a new supported RFID card enters the field.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::rfCardRemoved:`  
*Notification sent when the card leaves the field.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::deviceFeatureSupported:value:`  
*Notification sent when some of the features gets enabled or disabled.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::smartCardInserted:`  
*Notification sent when smartcard was inserted.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::smartCardRemoved:`  
*Notification sent when smartcard was removed.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::PINEntryCompleteWithError:`  
*Notification sent when PIN entry procedure have completed or was cancelled.*
- (void) - `<DTDeviceDelegate>::paperStatus:`  
*Notification sent when printer's paper sensor changes.*

## 2.2.1 Detailed Description

Notifications sent by the sdk on various events - barcode scanned, magnetic card data, communication status, etc.

## 2.2.2 Function Documentation

### 2.2.2.1 - (void) barcodeData: (NSString \*) *barcode* isotype:(NSString \*) *isotype*

Notification sent when barcode is successfully read.

This notification is used when barcode type is set to `BARCODE_TYPE_ISO15424`, or barcode engine is CR-800.

#### Parameters

<i>barcode</i>	- string containing barcode data
<i>isotype</i>	- ISO 15424 barcode type

### 2.2.2.2 - (void) barcodeData: (NSString \*) *barcode* type:(int) *type*

Notification sent when barcode is successfully read.

This notification is used when barcode type is set to `BARCODE_TYPE_DEFAULT` or `BARCODE_TYPE_EXTENDED`.

#### Parameters

<i>barcode</i>	- string containing barcode data
<i>type</i>	- barcode type, one of the <code>BAR_*</code> constants

### 2.2.2.3 - (void) bluetoothDeviceDiscovered: (NSString \*) *btAddress* name:(NSString \*) *btName*

Notification sent when bluetooth discovery finds new bluetooth device.

#### Parameters

<i>btAddress</i>	bluetooth address of the device
<i>btName</i>	bluetooth name of the device

### 2.2.2.4 - (void) bluetoothDiscoverComplete: (BOOL) *success*

Notification sent when bluetooth discovery finds new bluetooth device.

#### Parameters

<i>success</i>	true if the discovery complete successfully, even if it not resulted in any device found, false if there was an error communicating with the bluetooth module
----------------	---

### 2.2.2.5 - (void) connectionState: (int) *state*

Notifies about the current connection state.



## Parameters

<i>state</i>	- connection state, one of:	
	CONN_DISCONNECTED	there is no connection to any device and the sdk will not try to make one even if the device is attached
	CONN_CONNECTING	no device is currently connected, but the sdk is actively trying to
	CONN_CONNECTED	One or more devices are connected

## 2.2.2.6 - (void) deviceButtonPressed: (int) which

Notification sent when some of the device's buttons is pressed.

## Parameters

<i>which</i>	button identifier, one of:	
	0	right scan button

## 2.2.2.7 - (void) deviceButtonReleased: (int) which

Notification sent when some of the device's buttons is released.

## Parameters

<i>which</i>	button identifier, one of:	
	0	right scan button

## 2.2.2.8 - (void) deviceFeatureSupported: (int) feature value:(int) value

Notification sent when some of the features gets enabled or disabled.

## Parameters

<i>feature</i>	feature type, one of the FEAT_* constants	
<i>value</i>	FEAT_UNSUPPORTED if the feature is not supported on the connected device(s), FEAT_SUPPORTED or one of the specific constants for each feature otherwise	

## 2.2.2.9 - (void) firmwareUpdateProgress: (int) phase percent:(int) percent

Notification sent when firmware update process advances.

Do not call any other functions until firmware update is complete! During the firmware update notifications will be posted.

## Parameters

<i>phase</i>	update phase, one of:	
	UPDATE_INIT	Initializing firmware update
	UPDATE_ERASE	Erasing flash memory
	UPDATE_WRITE	Writing data
	UPDATE_FINISH	Update complete
<i>percent</i>	firmware update progress in percents	

### 2.2.2.10 - (void) magneticCardData: (NSString \*) track1 track2:(NSString \*) track2 track3:(NSString \*) track3

Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.

#### Parameters

<i>track1</i>	- data contained in track 1 of the magnetic card or nil
<i>track2</i>	- data contained in track 2 of the magnetic card or nil
<i>track3</i>	- data contained in track 3 of the magnetic card or nil

### 2.2.2.11 - (void) magneticCardEncryptedData: (int) encryption tracks:(int) tracks data:(NSData \*) data

Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.

The data is being sent encrypted.

#### Parameters

<i>encryption</i>	encryption algorithm used, one of ALG_* constants
-------------------	---

For AES256, after decryption, the result data will be as follows:

- Random data (4 bytes)
- Device identification text (16 ASCII characters, unused bytes are 0)
- Processed track data in the format: 0xF1 (track1 data), 0xF2 (track2 data) 0xF3 (track3 data). It is possible some of the tracks will be empty, then the identifier will not be present too, for example 0xF1 (track1 data) 0xF3 (track3 data)
- End of track data (byte 0x00)
- CRC16 (2 bytes) - the CRC is performed from the start of the encrypted block (the Random Data block) to the end of the track data (including the 0x00 byte). The data block is rounded to 16 bytes

In the more secure way, where the decryption key resides in a server only, the card read process will look something like:

- (User) swipes the card
- (iOS program) receives the data via magneticCardEncryptedData and sends to the server
- (iOS program)[optional] sends current device serial number along with the data received from magneticCardEncryptedData. This can be used for data origin verification
- (Server) decrypts the data, extracts all the information from the fields
- (Server)[optional] if the ipod program have sent the device serial number before, the server compares the received serial number with the one that's inside the encrypted block
- (Server) checks if the card data is the correct one, i.e. all needed tracks are present, card is the same type as required, etc and sends back notification to the ipod program.

For IDTECH with DUKPT the data contains:

- DATA[0]: CARD TYPE: 0 - payment card
- DATA[1]: TRACK FLAGS
- DATA[2]: TRACK 1 LENGTH
- DATA[3]: TRACK 2 LENGTH

- DATA[4]: TRACK 3 LENGTH
- DATA[??]: TRACK 1 DATA MASKED
- DATA[??]: TRACK 2 DATA MASKED
- DATA[??]: TRACK 3 DATA
- DATA[??]: TRACK 1 AND TRACK 2 TDES ENCRYPTED
- DATA[??]: TRACK 1 SHA1 (0x14 BYTES)
- DATA[??]: TRACK 2 SHA1 (0x14 BYTES)
- DATA[??]: DUKPT SERIAL AND COUNTER (0x0A BYTES)

**Parameters**

<i>tracks</i>	contain information which tracks are successfully read and inside the encrypted data as bit fields, bit 1 corresponds to track 1, etc, so value of 7 means all tracks are read
<i>data</i>	contains the encrypted card data

**2.2.2.12** - (void) magneticCardEncryptedData: (int) *encryption* tracks:(int) *tracks* data:(NSData \*) *data* track1masked:(NSString \*) *track1masked* track2masked:(NSString \*) *track2masked* track3:(NSString \*) *track3*

Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.

The data is being sent encrypted.

**Parameters**

<i>encryption</i>	encryption algorithm used, one of:	
	0	AES 256
	1	IDTECH with DUKPT

For AES256, after decryption, the result data will be as follows:

- Random data (4 bytes)
- Device identification text (16 ASCII characters, unused bytes are 0)
- Processed track data in the format: 0xF1 (track1 data), 0xF2 (track2 data) 0xF3 (track3 data). It is possible some of the tracks will be empty, then the identifier will not be present too, for example 0xF1 (track1 data) 0xF3 (track3 data)
- End of track data (byte 0x00)
- CRC16 (2 bytes) - the CRC is performed from the start of the encrypted block (the Random Data block) to the end of the track data (including the 0x00 byte). The data block is rounded to 16 bytes

In the more secure way, where the decryption key resides in a server only, the card read process will look something like:

- (User) swipes the card
- (iOS program) receives the data via magneticCardEncryptedData and sends to the server
- (iOS program)[optional] sends current Linea serial number along with the data received from magneticCard-EncryptedData. This can be used for data origin verification
- (Server) decrypts the data, extracts all the information from the fields

- (Server)[optional] if the ipod program have sent the Linea serial number before, the server compares the received serial number with the one that's inside the encrypted block
- (Server) checks if the card data is the correct one, i.e. all needed tracks are present, card is the same type as required, etc and sends back notification to the ipod program.

For IDTECH with DUKPT the data contains:

- DATA[0]: CARD TYPE: 0 - payment card
- DATA[1]: TRACK FLAGS
- DATA[2]: TRACK 1 LENGTH
- DATA[3]: TRACK 2 LENGTH
- DATA[4]: TRACK 3 LENGTH
- DATA[??]: TRACK 1 DATA MASKED
- DATA[??]: TRACK 2 DATA MASKED
- DATA[??]: TRACK 3 DATA
- DATA[??]: TRACK 1 AND TRACK 2 TDES ENCRYPTED
- DATA[??]: TRACK 1 SHA1 (0x14 BYTES)
- DATA[??]: TRACK 2 SHA1 (0x14 BYTES)
- DATA[??]: DUKPT SERIAL AND COUNTER (0x0A BYTES)

#### Parameters

<i>tracks</i>	contain information which tracks are successfully read and inside the encrypted data as bit fields, bit 1 corresponds to track 1, etc, so value of 7 means all tracks are read
<i>data</i>	contains the encrypted card data
<i>track1masked</i>	when possible, track1 data will be masked and returned here
<i>track2masked</i>	when possible, track2 data will be masked and returned here

#### 2.2.2.13 - (void) magneticCardEncryptedRawData: (int) encryption data:(NSData \*) data

Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.

The raw card data is encrypted via the selected encryption algorithm. After decryption, the result data will be as follows:

- Random data (4 bytes)
- Device identification text (16 ASCII characters, unused bytes are 0)
- Track data: the maximum length of a single track is 704 bits (88 bytes), so track data contains 3x88 bytes
- CRC16 (2 bytes) - the CRC is performed from the start of the encrypted block (the Random Data block) to the end of the track data. The data block is rounded to 16 bytes

#### Parameters

<i>encryption</i>	encryption algorithm used, one of ALG_* constants
<i>data</i>	- Contains the encrypted raw card data

**2.2.2.14 - (void) magneticCardRawData: (NSData \*) tracks**

Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.

**Parameters**

<i>tracks</i>	contains the raw magnetic card data. These are the bits directly from the magnetic head. The maximum length of a single track is 704 bits (88 bytes), so the command returns the 3 tracks as 3x88 bytes block
---------------	---

**2.2.2.15 - (void) magneticJISCardData: (NSString \*) data**

Notification sent when JIS I & II magnetic card is successfully read.

**Parameters**

<i>data</i>	- data contained in the magnetic card
-------------	---------------------------------------

**2.2.2.16 - (void) paperStatus: (BOOL) present**

Notification sent when printer's paper sensor changes.

**Parameters**

<i>present</i>	TRUE if paper is present, FALSE if printer is out of paper or cover is open
----------------	---

**2.2.2.17 - (void) rfCardDetected: (int) cardIndex info:(DTRFCardInfo \*) info**

Notification sent when a new supported RFID card enters the field.

**Parameters**

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card, use this index with all subsequent commands to the card
<i>info</i>	information about the card

**2.2.2.18 - (void) rfCardRemoved: (int) cardIndex**

Notification sent when the card leaves the field.

**Parameters**

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card, use this index with all subsequent commands to the card
------------------	--

## 2.3 General functions

Functions to connect/disconnect, set delegate, make sounds, update firmware, control various device settings.

### Functions

- (id) + [DTDevices::sharedDevice](#)  
*Creates and initializes new class instance or returns already initialized one.*
- (void) - [DTDevices::addDelegate:](#)  
*Allows unlimited delegates to be added to a single class instance.*
- (void) - [DTDevices::removeDelegate:](#)  
*Removes delegate, previously added with addDelegate.*
- (void) - [DTDevices::connect](#)  
*Tries to connect to supported devices in the background, connection status notifications will be passed through the delegate.*
- (void) - [DTDevices::disconnect](#)  
*Stops the sdk from trying to connect to supported devices and breaks existing connections.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::isPresent:](#)
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::setActiveDeviceType:error:](#)  
*The sdk can work with many devices at the same time, but some functions can be executed on a single device at a time (for example barcodeStartScan), this function sets the preferred device to execute the function by type.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::getBatteryCapacity:voltage:error:](#)  
*Returns active device's battery capacity.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::playSound:beepData:length:error:](#)  
*Plays a sound using the built-in speaker on the active device.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::getCharging:error:](#)  
*Returns if the connected device is charging the iOS device from its own battery.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::setCharging:error:](#)  
*Enables or disables Lines's capability to charge the handheld from its own battery.*
- (NSDictionary \*) - [DTDevices::getFirmwareFileInformation:error:](#)  
*Returns information about the specified firmware data.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::updateFirmwareData:error:](#)  
*Updates connected device's firmware with specified firmware data.*
- (int) - [DTDevices::getSupportedFeature:error:](#)  
*Returns if a feature is supported on connected device(s) and what type it is.*

### 2.3.1 Detailed Description

Functions to connect/disconnect, set delegate, make sounds, update firmware, control various device settings.

### 2.3.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.3.2.1 - (void) addDelegate: (id) newDelegate

Allows unlimited delegates to be added to a single class instance.

This is useful in the case of global class and every view can use addDelegate when the view is shown and removeDelegate when no longer needs to monitor events

#### Parameters

<i>newDelegate</i>	the delegate that will be notified of events
--------------------	--

## 2.3.2.2 - (void) connect

Tries to connect to supported devices in the background, connection status notifications will be passed through the delegate.

Once connect is called, it will automatically try to reconnect until disconnect is called. Note that "connect" call works in background and will notify the caller of connection success via connectionState delegate. Do not assume the library has fully connected to the device after this call, but wait for the notification.

## 2.3.2.3 - (BOOL) getBatteryCapacity: (int \*) capacity voltage:(float \*) voltage error:(NSError \*\*) error

Returns active device's battery capacity.

## Note

Reading battery voltages during charging is unreliable!

## Parameters

<i>capacity</i>	returns battery capacity in percents, ranging from 0 when battery is dead to 100 when fully charged. Pass nil if you don't want that information
<i>voltage</i>	returns battery voltage in Volts, pass nil if you don't want that information
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.3.2.4 - (BOOL) getCharging: (BOOL \*) charging error:(NSError \*\*) error

Returns if the connected device is charging the iOS device from it's own battery.

Linea firmware versions prior to 2.13 will return true if external charge is attached, 2.13 and later will return only if Linea's own battery is used for charging.

## Parameters

<i>charging</i>	returns TRUE if charging is enabled (from internal battery, external charging is omitted)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.3.2.5 - (NSDictionary \*) getFirmwareFileInformation: (NSData \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error

Returns information about the specified firmware data.

Based on it, and the connected device's name, model and firmware version you can chose to update or not the firmware

## Parameters

data	- firmware data		
	"deviceName"	Device name, for example "Linea"	
	"deviceModel"	Device model, for example "XBAMBL"	Firmware revision as number
		"firmware-Revision"	MAJOR*100+MINOR, i.e. 2.41 will be returned as 241
		- Firmware revision as string, for example 2.41	
		"firmware-RevisionNumber"	
error	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information		

## Returns

firmware information if function succeeded, nil otherwise

## 2.3.2.6 - (int) getSupportedFeature: (int) feature error:(NSError \*\*) error

Returns if a feature is supported on connected device(s) and what type it is.

## Parameters

<i>feature</i>	one of the FEAT_* constants
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

FEAT\_UNSUPPORTED if feature is not supported, FEAT\_SUPPORTED or one or more feature specific types otherwise

## 2.3.2.7 - (BOOL) playSound: (int) volume beepData:(int \*) data length:(int) length error:(NSError \*\*) error

Plays a sound using the built-in speaker on the active device.

## Note

A sample beep containing of 2 tones, each with 400ms duration, first one 2000Hz and second - 5000Hz will look int beepData[]={2000,400,5000,400}

## Parameters

<i>volume</i>	controls the volume (0-100). Currently have no effect
<i>data</i>	an array of integer values specifying pairs of tone(Hz) and duration(ms).
<i>length</i>	length in bytes of beepData array
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information



**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.3.2.8 - (void) removeDelegate: (id) newDelegate**

Removes delegate, previously added with addDelegate.

**Parameters**

<i>newDelegate</i>	the delegate that will be no longer be notified of events
--------------------	---

**2.3.2.9 - (BOOL) setActiveDeviceType: (int) type error:(NSError \*\*) error**

The sdk can work with many devices at the same time, but some functions can be executed on a single device at a time (for example barcodeStartScan), this function sets the preferred device to execute the function by type.

**Parameters**

<i>type</i>	device type to be made active, one of the DEVICE_TYPE_* constants
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.3.2.10 - (BOOL) setCharging: (BOOL) enabled error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Enables or disables Linea's capability to charge the handheld from it's own battery.

Charging can stop if connected device's battery goes too low.

While Linea can act as external battery for the iPod/iPhone, there are certain limitations if you decide to implement it. The internal battery is not big enough, so if the iPod/iPhone consumes a lot of power from it, it will go down very fast and force the firmware to cut the charge to prevent going down to dangerous levels. The proper use of this charging function depends on how the program, running on the iPod/iPhone, is used and how the iPod/iPhone is discharged

There are two possible ways to use Linea's charge:

- Emergency mode - in the case iPod/iPhone usage is designed in a way it will last long enough between charging sessions and using Linea's charge is not generally needed, the charge can be used if the iPod/iPhone for some reason goes too low (like <50%), so it is given some power to continue working until next charging. An example will be store, where devices are being charged every night, but extreme usage on some iPod drains the battery before the end of the shift. This is the less efficient way to charge it, also, Linea will refuse to start the charge if it's own battery goes below 3.8v, so depending on the usage, barcode type and if the barcode engine is set to work all the time, it may not be possible to start the charge.
- Max life mode - it is the case where both devices are required to operate as long as possible. Usually, the iPod/iPhone's battery will be drained way faster than Linea's, especially with wifi enabled programs and to keep both devices operating as long as possible, the charging should be designed in a way so iPod/iPhone is able to use most of Linea's battery. This is possible, if you start charging when iPod/iPhone is almost full - at around 75-80% or higher. This way the iPod will consume small amount of energy, allowing our battery to slowly be used almost fully to charge it.

LibraryDemo application contains sample implementation of max life mode charging.

**Note**

Reading battery voltages during charging is unreliable!  
 Enabling charge can fail if connected device's battery is low. Disabling charge will fail if there is external charger or usb cable attached.

**Parameters**

<i>enabled</i>	TRUE to enable charging, FALSE to disable/stop it
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.3.2.11 + (id) sharedDevice**

Creates and initializes new class instance or returns already initialized one.

Use this function, if you want to access the class from different places

**Returns**

shared class instance

**2.3.2.12 - (BOOL) updateFirmwareData: (NSData \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Updates connected device's firmware with specified firmware data.

The firmware can only be upgraded or downgraded, if you send the same firmware version, then no update process will be started.

**Note**

Make sure the user does not interrupt the process or the device will be rendered unusable and can only be recovered via the special firmware update cable

**Parameters**

<i>data</i>	the firmware data
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.4 Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted)

Functions to work with the unencrypted magnetic card reader.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::msEnable:](#)  
*Enables reading of magnetic cards.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::msDisable:](#)  
*Disables magnetic card reading.*
- (NSDictionary \*) - [DTDevices::msProcessFinancialCard:track2:](#)  
*Helper function to parse financial card and extract the data - name, number, expiration date.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::msSetCardDataMode:error:](#)  
*Sets Linea's magnetic card data mode.*

### 2.4.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with the unencrypted magnetic card reader.

### 2.4.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.4.2.1 - (BOOL) msDisable: (NSError \*\*) error

Disables magnetic card reading.

##### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

##### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.4.2.2 - (BOOL) msEnable: (NSError \*\*) error

Enables reading of magnetic cards.

Current magnetic card heads used in Linea consume so little power, that there is no drawback in leaving it enabled all the time. By default magnetic card reading is enabled upon connect.

##### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

##### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.4.2.3 - (NSDictionary \*) msProcessFinancialCard: (NSString \*) track1 track2:(NSString \*) track2

Helper function to parse financial card and extract the data - name, number, expiration date.

The function will extract as much information as possible.

#### Parameters

<i>track1</i>	- track1 information or nil
<i>track2</i>	- track2 information or nil

#### Returns

dictionary containing extracted data or nil if the data is invalid. Keys contained are:

"accountNumber"	Account number
"cardholderName"	Cardholder name, as stored in the card
"expirationYear"	Expiration date - year
"expirationMonth"	Expiration date - month
"serviceCode"	Service code (if any)
"discretionaryData"	Discretionary data (if any)
"firstName"	Extracted cardholder's first name
"lastName"	Extracted cardholder's last name

#### 2.4.2.4 - (BOOL) msSetCardDataMode: (int) *mode* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Sets Linea's magnetic card data mode.

This setting is not persistent and is best to configure it upon connect.

#### Parameters

<i>mode</i>	magnetic card data mode:	
	MS_PROCESSED_CARD_DATA	Card data will be processed and will be returned via call to magneticCardData
	MS_RAW_CARD_DATA	Card data will not be processed and will be returned via call to magneticCardRawData
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.5 Barcode Reader Functions

Functions for scanning barcodes, various barcode settings and direct control of the barcode engine.

### Functions

- (NSString \*) - [DTDevices::barcodeType2Text:](#)  
*Helper function to return string name of barcode type.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeStartScan:](#)  
*Starts barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeStopScan:](#)  
*Stops ongoing scan started with startScan.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeGetScanButtonMode:error:](#)  
*Returns the current scan button mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeSetScanButtonMode:error:](#)  
*Sets scan button mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeSetScanBeep:volume:beepData:length:error:](#)  
*Sets the sound, which is used upon successful barcode scan.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeGetScanMode:error:](#)  
*Returns the current scan mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeSetScanMode:error:](#)  
*Sets barcode engine scan mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeGetTypeMode:error:](#)  
*Returns the current barcode type mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeSetTypeMode:error:](#)  
*Sets barcode type mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeEngineResetToDefaults:](#)  
*Performs factory reset of the barcode module.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeOpticonSetInitString:error:](#)  
*Allows for a custom initialization string to be sent to the Opticon barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeOpticonSetParams:saveToFlash:error:](#)  
*Sends configuration parameters directly to the opticon barcode engine.*
- (NSString \*) - [DTDevices::barcodeOpticonGetIdent:](#)  
*Reads barcode engine's identification.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeOpticonUpdateFirmware:bootLoader:error:](#)  
*Performs firmware update on the opticon 2D barcode engines.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeCodeSetParam:value:error:](#)  
*Sends configuration parameters directly to the code barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeCodeGetParam:value:error:](#)  
*Reads configuration parameters directly from the code barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeCodeUpdateFirmware:data:error:](#)  
*Performs firmware update on the Code 2D barcode engines.*
- (NSDictionary \*) - **DTDevices::barcodeCodeGetInformation:**
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::barcodeIntermecSetInitData:error:](#)  
*Allows for a custom initialization string to be sent to the Intermec barcode engine.*

### 2.5.1 Detailed Description

Functions for scanning barcodes, various barcode settings and direct control of the barcode engine.

## 2.5.2 Function Documentation

### 2.5.2.1 - (BOOL) barcodeCodeGetParam: (int) *setting* value:(uint64\_t \*) *value* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Reads configuration parameters directly from the code barcode engine.

Refer to the barcode engine documentation for supported parameters.

#### Parameters

<i>setting</i>	the setting number
<i>value</i>	upon success, the parameter value will be stored here

#### Returns

TRUE if operation was successful

#### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.5.2.2 - (BOOL) barcodeCodeSetParam: (int) *setting* value:(uint64\_t) *value* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Sends configuration parameters directly to the code barcode engine.

Use this function with EXTREME care, you can easily render your barcode engine useless. Refer to the barcode engine documentation for supported parameters.

#### Parameters

<i>setting</i>	the setting number
<i>value</i>	the value to write to

#### Returns

TRUE if operation was successful

#### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.5.2.3 - (BOOL) barcodeCodeUpdateFirmware: (NSString \*) *name* data:(NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs firmware update on the Code 2D barcode engines.

Barcode update can take very long time, it is best to call this function from a thread and update the user interface when firmwareUpdateProgress delegate is called

## Parameters

<i>name</i>	the exact name of the firmware file
<i>data</i>	firmware file data to load
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.5.2.4 - (BOOL) barcodeEngineResetToDefaults: (NSError \*\*) error

Performs factory reset of the barcode module.

This function is taxing, slow and should not be called often, emergency use only.

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.5.2.5 - (BOOL) barcodeGetScanButtonMode: (int \*) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error

Returns the current scan button mode.

See setScanButtonMode for more detailed description. This setting is not persistent and is best to configure it upon connect.

## Parameters

<i>mode</i>	returns scan button mode, one of the:	
	BUTTON_DISABLED	Scan button will become inactive
	BUTTON_ENABLED	Scan button will trigger barcode scan when pressed
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.5.2.6 - (BOOL) barcodeGetScanMode: (int \*) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error

Returns the current scan mode.

This setting is not persistent and is best to configure it upon connect.

## Parameters

<i>mode</i>	returns scanning mode, one of the MODE_* constants
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.7 - (BOOL) barcodeGetTypeMode: (int \*) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Returns the current barcode type mode.

See setBarcodeTypeMode for more detailed description. This setting will not persists.

**Parameters**

<i>mode</i>	returns barcode type mode, one of the:	
	BARCODE_TYPE_DEFAULT	default barcode types, listed in BARCODES enumeration
	BARCODE_TYPE_EXTENDED	extended barcode types, listed in BARCODES_EX enumeration
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.8 - (BOOL) barcodeIntermecSetInitData: (NSData \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Allows for a custom initialization string to be sent to the Intermec barcode engine.

The data is sent directly, if the barcode is currently powered on, and every time it gets initialized. The setting does not persists, so it is best this command is called upon new connection.

**Parameters**

<i>data</i>	barcode engine initialization data (consult barcode engine manual)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.9 - (NSString \*) barcodeOpticonGetIdent: (NSError \*\*) error**

Reads barcode engine's identification.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

opticon engine ident string if function succeeded, nil otherwise



**2.5.2.10 - (BOOL) barcodeOpticonSetInitString: (NSString \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Allows for a custom initialization string to be sent to the Opticon barcode engine.

The string is sent directly, if the barcode is currently powered on, and every time it gets initialized. The setting does not persist, so it is best this command is called upon new connection.

**Parameters**

<i>data</i>	barcode engine initialization data (consult barcode engine manual)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.11 - (BOOL) barcodeOpticonSetParams: (NSString \*) data saveToFlash:(BOOL) saveToFlash error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sends configuration parameters directly to the opticon barcode engine.

Use this function with EXTREME care, you can easily render your barcode engine useless. Refer to the barcode engine documentation on supported commands.

The function encapsulates the data with the ESC and CR so you don't have to send them. It optionally sends Z2 after the command to ensure settings are stored in the flash.

You can send multiple parameters with a single call if you format them as follows:

- commands that take 2 symbols can be sent without any delimiters, like: "C1C2C3"
- commands that take 3 symbols should be prefixed by [, like: "C1[C2AC3" (in this case commands are C1, C2A and C3)
- commands that take 4 symbols should be prefixed by ], like: "C1C2]C3AB" (in this case commands are C1, C2 and C3AB)

**Parameters**

<i>data</i>	command string
<i>saveToFlash</i>	if TRUE, command also saves the settings to flash. Saving setting is slower, so should be in ideal case executed only once and the program to remember it. The scanner's power usually gets cut when device goes to sleep - 5 seconds of idle time, so any non-stored to flash settings are lost, but if barcodeEnginePowerControl:TRUE is used on 2D engine, then even non-saved to flash settings will persist until device disconnects (iOS goes to sleep, physical disconnect)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.12 - (BOOL) barcodeOpticonUpdateFirmware: (NSData \*) firmwareData bootLoader:(BOOL) bootLoader error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Performs firmware update on the opticon 2D barcode engines.

Barcode update can take very long time, it is best to call this function from a thread and update the user interface when firmwareUpdateProgress delegate is called

## Parameters

<i>firmwareData</i>	firmware file data to load
<i>bootLoader</i>	TRUE if you are going to update bootloader, FALSE if normal firmware
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.13 - (BOOL) barcodeSetScanBeep: (BOOL) *enabled* volume:(int) *volume* beepData:(int \*) *data* length:(int) *length* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets the sound, which is used upon successful barcode scan.

This setting is not persistent and is best to configure it upon connect.

## Note

A sample beep containing of 2 tones, each with 400ms duration, first one 2000Hz and second - 5000Hz will look int beepData[]={2000,400,5000,400}

## Parameters

<i>enabled</i>	turns on or off beeping
<i>volume</i>	controls the volume (0-100). Currently have no effect
<i>data</i>	an array of integer values specifying pairs of tone(Hz) and duration(ms).
<i>length</i>	length in bytes of beepData array
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.14 - (BOOL) barcodeSetScanButtonMode: (int) *mode* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets scan button mode.

This setting is not persistent and is best to configure it upon connect.

## Parameters

<i>mode</i>	button mode, one of the:	
	BUTTON_DISABLED	Scan button will become inactive
	BUTTON_ENABLED	Scan button will trigger barcode scan when pressed
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.15 - (BOOL) barcodeSetScanMode: (int) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sets barcode engine scan mode.

This setting is not persistent and is best to configure it upon connect.

**Parameters**

<i>mode</i>	scanning mode, one of the MODE_* constants
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.16 - (BOOL) barcodeSetTypeMode: (int) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sets barcode type mode.

Barcode type can be returned from the default list (listed in BARCODES), extended one (listed in BARCODES\_EX) or ISO/AIM list. The extended one is superset to the default, so current programs will be mostly unaffected if they switch from default to extended (with the exception of barcodes like UPC-A and UPC-E, which will be returned as UPC in the default list, but proper types in the extended. This setting will not persists.

**Parameters**

<i>mode</i>	barcode type mode, one of the:	
	BARCODE_TYPE_DEFAULT (default)	default barcode types, listed in BARCODES enumeration
	BARCODE_TYPE_EXTENDED	extended barcode types, listed in BARCODES_EX enumeration
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.17 - (BOOL) barcodeStartScan: (NSError \*\*) error**

Starts barcode engine.

In single scan mode the laser will be on until barcode is successfully read, the timeout elapses (set via call to setScanTimeout) or if stopScan is called. In multi scan mode the laser will stay on even if barcode is successfully read allowing series of barcodes to be scanned within a single read session. The scanning will stop if no barcode is scanned in the timeout interval (set via call to setScanTimeout) or if stopScan is called.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.18 - (BOOL) barcodeStopScan: (NSError \*\*) *error***

Stops ongoing scan started with startScan.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.5.2.19 - (NSString \*) barcodeType2Text: (int) *barcodeType***

Helper function to return string name of barcode type.

**Parameters**

<i>barcodeType</i>	barcode type returned from scanBarcode
--------------------	--

**Returns**

barcode type name

## 2.6 Bluetooth Functions

Functions to work with the built-in bluetooth module.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground:maxTime:filter:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of nearby supported bluetooth devices.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverDevicesInBackground:maxTime:codTypes:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of the nearby bluetooth devices.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:maxTime:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:maxTime:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btConnect:pin:error:](#)  
*Tries to connect to remote device.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btDisconnect:error:](#)  
*Disconnects from remote device.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btConnectSupportedDevice:pin:error:](#)  
*Tries to connect to supported bluetooth device.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btWrite:length:error:](#)  
*Sends data to the connected remote device.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btWrite:error:](#)  
*Sends data to the connected remote device.*
- (int) - [DTDevices::btRead:length:timeout:error:](#)  
*Tries to read data from the connected remote device for specified timeout.*
- (NSString \*) - [DTDevices::btReadLine:error:](#)  
*Tries to read string data, ending with CR/LF up to specifed timeout.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btEnableWriteCaching:error:](#)  
*Enables or disables write caching on the bluetooth stream.*
- (NSArray \*) - [DTDevices::btDiscoverDevices:maxTime:codTypes:error:](#)  
*Performs synchronous discovery of the nearby bluetooth devices.*
- (NSString \*) - [DTDevices::btGetDeviceName:error:](#)  
*Queries device name given the address.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::btSetDataNotificationMaxTime:maxLength:sequenceData:error:](#)  
*Sets the conditions to fire the `NSSStreamEventHasBytesAvailable` event on bluetooth streams.*

### Properties

- `NSInputStream *` [DTDevices::btInputStream](#)  
*Bluetooth input stream, you can use it after connecting with `btConnect`.*
- `NSOutputStream *` [DTDevices::btOutputStream](#)  
*Bluetooth output stream, you can use it after connecting with `btConnect`.*
- `NSArray *` [DTDevices::btConnectedDevices](#)  
*Contains bluetooth addresses of the currently connected bluetooth devices or empty array if no connected devices are found.*

## 2.6.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with the built-in bluetooth module.

## 2.6.2 Function Documentation

### 2.6.2.1 - (BOOL) btConnect: (NSString \*) address pin:(NSString \*) pin error:(NSError \*\*) error

Tries to connect to remote device.

Once connection is established, use bluetooth streams to read/write to the remote device.

#### Note

active connection with remote device will be broken

#### Parameters

<i>address</i>	bluetooth address returned from btDiscoverDevices/btDiscoverPrinters
<i>pin</i>	PIN code if needed, or nil to try unencrypted connection
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.6.2.2 - (BOOL) btConnectSupportedDevice: (NSString \*) address pin:(NSString \*) pin error:(NSError \*\*) error

Tries to connect to supported bluetooth device.

Supported devices are the ones the sdk has built-in support for - printers and pinpads. If successful, additional functions will become available and feature notifications will be sent

#### Note

active connection with remote device will be broken

#### Parameters

<i>address</i>	bluetooth address returned from btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground/btDiscoverPrintersInBackground
<i>pin</i>	PIN code if needed, or nil to try unencrypted connection
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.6.2.3 - (BOOL) btDisconnect: (NSString \*) address error:(NSError \*\*) error

Disconnects from remote device.

## Parameters

<i>address</i>	bluetooth address returned from btDiscoverDevices/btDiscoverPrinters
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.6.2.4** - (NSArray \*) btDiscoverDevices: (int) *maxDevices* maxTime:(double) *maxTime* codTypes:(int) *codTypes* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs synchronous discovery of the nearby bluetooth devices.

Implemented for compatibility only!

**Deprecated** This function is not recommended to be called on the main thread, use btDiscoverDevicesInBackground instead

## Note

this function cannot be called once connection to remote device was established

## Parameters

<i>maxDevices</i>	the maximum results to return
<i>maxTime</i>	the max time to discover, in seconds. Actual time may vary.
<i>codTypes</i>	bluetooth Class Of Device to look for or 0 to search for all bluetooth devices
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

array of strings of bluetooth addresses if function succeeded, nil otherwise

**2.6.2.5** - (BOOL) btDiscoverDevicesInBackground: (int) *maxDevices* maxTime:(double) *maxTime* codTypes:(int) *codTypes* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs background discovery of the nearby bluetooth devices.

The discovery status and devices found will be sent via delegate notifications

## Note

active connection with remote device will be broken

## Parameters

<i>maxDevices</i>	the maximum results to return
<i>maxTime</i>	the max time to discover, in seconds. Actual time may vary.
<i>codTypes</i>	bluetooth Class Of Device to look for or 0 to search for all bluetooth devices
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.6.2.6 - (BOOL) btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground: (NSError \*\*) error**

Performs background discovery of supported printers.

These include MPED-400 and PPAD1. The discovery status and devices found will be sent via delegate notifications

**Note**

active connection with remote device will be broken

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.6.2.7 - (BOOL) btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground: (int) maxDevices maxTime:(double) maxTime error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Performs background discovery of supported printers.

These include MPED-400 and PPAD1. The discovery status and devices found will be sent via delegate notifications

**Note**

active connection with remote device will be broken

**Parameters**

<i>maxDevices</i>	the maximum results to return, default is 4
<i>maxTime</i>	the max time to discover, in seconds. Actual time may vary.
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.6.2.8 - (BOOL) btDiscoverPrintersInBackground: (NSError \*\*) error**

Performs background discovery of supported printers.

These include PP-60, DPP-250, DPP-350, SM-112, DPP-450. The discovery status and devices found will be sent via delegate notifications

**Note**

active connection with remote device will be broken



## Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.6.2.9 - (BOOL) btDiscoverPrintersInBackground: (int) *maxDevices* maxTime:(double) *maxTime* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs background discovery of supported printers.

These include PP-60, DPP-250, DPP-350, SM-112, DPP-450. The discovery status and devices found will be sent via delegate notifications

## Note

active connection with remote device will be broken

## Parameters

<i>maxDevices</i>	the maximum results to return, default is 4
<i>maxTime</i>	the max time to discover, in seconds. Actual time may vary.
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.6.2.10 - (BOOL) btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground: (int) *maxDevices* maxTime:(double) *maxTime* filter:(int) *filter* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs background discovery of nearby supported bluetooth devices.

Supported devices are the ones some of the sdk has built-in support for - printers and pinpads. The discovery status and devices found will be sent via delegate notifications

## Note

this function cannot be called once connection to remote device was established

## Parameters

<i>maxDevices</i>	the maximum results to return
<i>maxTime</i>	the max time to discover, in seconds. Actual time may vary.
<i>filter</i>	filter of which devices to discover, a combination of one or more of BLUETOOTH_FILTER_* constants or BLUETOOTH_FILTER_ALL to get all supported devices
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.6.2.11 - (BOOL) btEnableWriteCaching: (BOOL) *enabled* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Enables or disables write caching on the bluetooth stream.

When enabled the writes gets cached and send on bigger chunks, reducing substantially the time taken, if you are sending lot of data in small parts. Write caching has negative effect on the speed if your bluetooth communication is based on request/response format or packets, in this case every write operation will get delayed, resulting in very poor throughput.

#### Parameters

<i>enabled</i>	enable or disable write caching, by default it is disabled
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.6.2.12 - (NSString \*) btGetDeviceName: (NSString \*) *address* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Queries device name given the address.

Implemented for compatibility only!

**Deprecated** This function complements the btDiscoverDevices/btDiscoverPrinters and as such is not recommended, use btDiscoverDevicesInBackground instead

#### Note

this function cannot be called once connection to remote device was established

#### Parameters

<i>address</i>	bluetooth address returned from btDiscoverDevices/btDiscoverPrinters
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

bluetooth device name if function succeeded, nil otherwise

### 2.6.2.13 - (int) btRead: (void \*) *data* length:(int) *length* timeout:(double) *timeout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Tries to read data from the connected remote device for specified timeout.

#### Note

You can use bluetooth streams instead

#### Parameters

<i>data</i>	data buffer, where the result will be stored
<i>length</i>	maximum amount of bytes to wait for
<i>timeout</i>	maximim timeout in seconds to wait for data

**Returns**

the

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

actual number of bytes stored in the data buffer if function succeeded, -1 otherwise

**2.6.2.14 - (NSString \*) btReadLine: (double) timeout error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Tries to read string data, ending with CR/LF up to specified timeout.

**Note**

You can use bluetooth streams instead

**Parameters**

<i>timeout</i>	maximim timeout in seconds to wait for data
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

string with the line read (can be empty string too) if function succeeded, nil otherwise

**2.6.2.15 - (BOOL) btSetDataNotificationMaxTime: (double) maxTime maxLength:(int) maxLength sequenceData:(NSData \*) sequenceData error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sets the conditions to fire the NSStreamEventHasBytesAvailable event on bluetooth streams.

If all special conditions are disabled, then the notification will be fired the moment data arrives. You can have multiple notifications active at the same time, for example maxBytes and maxTime.

**Parameters**

<i>maxTime</i>	notification will be fired 'maxTime' seconds after the last byte arrives, passing 0 disables it. For example 0.1 means that 100ms after the last byte is received the notification will fire.
<i>maxLength</i>	notification will be fired after 'maxLength' data arrives, passing 0 disables it.
<i>sequenceData</i>	notification will be fired if the received data contains 'sequenceData', passing nil disables it.

**2.6.2.16 - (BOOL) btWrite: (NSString \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sends data to the connected remote device.

**Note**

You can use bluetooth streams instead

## Parameters

<i>data</i>	data string to write
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.6.2.17 - (BOOL) btWrite: (void \*) data length:(int) length error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sends data to the connected remote device.

## Note

You can use bluetooth streams instead

## Parameters

<i>data</i>	data bytes to write
<i>length</i>	the length of the data in the buffer
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.6.3 Properties****2.6.3.1 - (NSInputStream\*) btInputStream [read],[atomic],[assign]**

Bluetooth input stream, you can use it after connecting with btConnect.

See NSInputStream documentation.

**2.6.3.2 - (NSOutputStream\*) btOutputStream [read],[atomic],[assign]**

Bluetooth output stream, you can use it after connecting with btConnect.

See NSOutputStream documentation.

## 2.7 External Serial Port Functions

Functions to work with Linea Tab's external serial port.

### Macros

- `#define PARITY_NONE 0`  
*No parity.*
- `#define PARITY_EVEN 1`  
*Even parity.*
- `#define PARITY_ODD 2`  
*Odd parity.*
- `#define DATABITS_7 1`  
*7 data bits*
- `#define DATABITS_8 0`  
*8 data bits*
- `#define STOPBITS_1 0`  
*1 stop bits*
- `#define STOPBITS_2 1`  
*2 stop bits*
- `#define FLOW_NONE 0`  
*No flow control.*
- `#define FLOW_RTS_CTS 1`  
*RTS/CTS hardware flow control.*
- `#define FLOW_DTR_DSR 2`  
*DSR/DTR hardware flow control.*
- `#define FLOW_XON_XOFF 3`  
*XON/XOFF software flow control.*

### Functions

- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::extOpenSerialPort:baudRate:parity:dataBits:stopBits:flowControl:error:`  
*Opens the external serial port with specified settings.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::extCloseSerialPort:error:`  
*Closes the external serial port opened with extOpenSerialPort.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::extWriteSerialPort:data:error:`  
*Sends data to the connected remote device via serial port.*
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::extReadSerialPort:length:timeout:error:`  
*Reads data from the connected remote device via serial port.*

#### 2.7.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with Linea Tab's external serial port.

## 2.7.2 Function Documentation

### 2.7.2.1 - (BOOL) extCloseSerialPort: (int) *port* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Closes the external serial port opened with extOpenSerialPort.

#### Parameters

<i>port</i>	the port number, currently only 1 is used
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

### 2.7.2.2 - (BOOL) extOpenSerialPort: (int) *port* baudRate:(int) *baudRate* parity:(int) *parity* dataBits:(int) *dataBits* stopBits:(int) *stopBits* flowControl:(int) *flowControl* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Opens the external serial port with specified settings.

#### Parameters

<i>port</i>	the port number, currently only 1 is used
<i>baudRate</i>	serial baud rate
<i>parity</i>	serial parity, one of the PARITY_* constants (currently only PARITY_NONE is supported)
<i>dataBits</i>	serial data bits, one of the DATABITS_* constants (currently only DATABITS_8 is supported)
<i>stopBits</i>	serial stop bits, one of the STOPBITS_* constants (currently only STOPBITS_1 is supported)
<i>flowControl</i>	serial flow control, one of the FLOW_* constants (currently only FLOW_NONE is supported)
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

### 2.7.2.3 - (NSData \*) extReadSerialPort: (int) *port* length:(int) *length* timeout:(double) *timeout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Reads data from the connected remote device via serial port.

#### Parameters

<i>port</i>	the port number, currently only 1 is used
<i>length</i>	the maximum amount of data to read
<i>timeout</i>	timeout in seconds, passing 0 reads and returns the bytes currently in the buffer
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

NSData with bytes received if function succeeded, nil otherwise

### 2.7.2.4 - (BOOL) extWriteSerialPort: (int) *port* data:(NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Sends data to the connected remote device via serial port.

## Parameters

<i>port</i>	the port number, currently only 1 is used
<i>data</i>	data bytes to write
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.8 TCP/IP Functions

Functions to work with the supported devices over the network.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tcpConnectSupportedDevice:error:](#)  
*Tries to connect to supported device over the network.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tcpDisconnect:error:](#)  
*Disconnects from remote device.*

### Properties

- NSArray \* [DTDevices::tcpConnectedDevices](#)  
*Contains tcp addresses of the currently connected network devices or empty array if no connected devices are found.*

### 2.8.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with the supported devices over the network.

### 2.8.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.8.2.1 - (BOOL) tcpConnectSupportedDevice: (NSString \*) address error:(NSError \*\*) error

Tries to connect to supported device over the network.

Supported devices are the ones the sdk has built-in support for - printers and pinpads. If successful, additional functions will become available and feature notifications will be sent

#### Note

active connection with remote device will be broken

#### Parameters

<i>address</i>	network address, either dns or IP. Optionally provide a port number separated by : i.e. address:port. Default port is 9100.
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.8.2.2 - (BOOL) tcpDisconnect: (NSString \*) address error:(NSError \*\*) error

Disconnects from remote device.

#### Parameters

<i>address</i>	the address to disconnect from, the same one that was used to connect to tcpConnectConnect-SupportedDevice
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information



**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.9 Cryptographic & Security Functions

Starting from firmware 2.13, Linea provides strong cryptographic support for magnetic card data.

### Functions

- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::cryptoRawGenerateRandomData:](#)  
*Generates 16 byte block of random numbers, required for some of the other crypto functions.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::cryptoRawSetKey:encryptedData:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::cryptoSetKey:key:oldKey:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:](#)  
*Used to store AES256 keys into Linea internal memory.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::cryptoGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:](#)  
*Returns key version.*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::cryptoAuthenticateDevice:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::cryptoRawAuthenticateHost:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::cryptoAuthenticateHost:error:](#)

### 2.9.1 Detailed Description

Starting from firmware 2.13, Linea provides strong cryptographic support for magnetic card data. The encryption is supported on all Linea devices, from software point of view they are all the same, but provide different levels of hardware/firmware security.

An overview of the security, provided by Linea (see each of the crypto functions for further detail):

Hardware/Firmware:

For magnetic card encryption Linea is using AES256, which is the current industry standard encryption algorithm. The encryption key resides in volatile, battery powered ram inside Linea's cpu (for Linea 1.5 onward) and is being lost if anyone tries to break in the Linea device in order to prevent the key from being stolen. Magnetic card data, along with device serial number and some random bytes (to ensure every packet will be different) are being sent to the iOS program in an encrypted way.

Software:

Currently there are 2 types of keys, that can be loaded into Linea:

- AUTHENTICATION KEY - used for device authentication (for example the program can lock itself to work with very specific Linea device) and encryption of the firmware
- ENCRYPTION KEY - used for magnetic card data encryption. To use msr encryption, you don't need to set the AUTHENTICATION KEY.

Keys: The keys can be set/changed in two ways:

1. Using plain key data - this method is easy to use, but less secure, as it relies on program running on iPod/iPhone to have the key inside, an attacker could compromise the system and extract the key from device's memory. Call `cryptoSetKey` to set the keys this way. If there is an existing key of the same type inside Linea, you have to pass it too.
2. Using encrypted key data - this method is harder to implement, but provides better security - the key data, encrypted with old key data is sent from a server in secure environment to the program, running on the iOS, then the program forwards it to the Linea. The program itself have no means to decrypt the data, so an attacker can't possibly extract the key. Refer to `cryptoSetKey` documentation for more detailed description of the loading process.

The initial loading of the keys should always be done in a secure environment.

Magnetic card encryption:

Once ENCRYPTION KEY is set, all magnetic card data gets encrypted, and is now sent via magneticCard-EncryptedData instead. The LineaDemo program contains sample code to decrypt the data block and extract the contents - the serial number and track data.

As with keys, card data can be extracted on the iOS device itself (less secure, the application needs to have the key inside) or be sent to a secure server to be processed. Note, that the encrypted data contains Linea's serial number too, this can be used for Data Origin Verification, to be sure someone is not trying to mimic data, coming from another device.

Demo program: the sample program now have "Crypto" tab, where key management can be tested:

- New AES 256 key - type in the key you want to set (or change to)
- Old AES 256 key - type in the previous key, or leave blank if you set the key for the first time

[SET AUTHENTICATION KEY] and [SET ENCRYPTION KEY] buttons allow you to use the key info in the text fields above to set the key.

- Decryption key - type in the key, which the demo program will use to try to decrypt card data. This field should contain the ENCRYPTION KEY, or something random, if you want to test failed card data decryption.

## 2.9.2 Function Documentation

### 2.9.2.1 - (BOOL) cryptoAuthenticateDevice: (NSData \*) key error:(NSError \*\*) error

#### Note

Check out the cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice function, if you want to not use the key inside the mobile device.

Generates random data, uses the key to encrypt it, then encrypts the same data with the stored authentication key inside Linea and returns true if both data matches.

The idea: if a program wants to work with specific Linea device, it sets AES256 authentication key once, then on every connect the program uses cryptoAuthenticateDevice with that key. If Linea contains no key, or the key is different, the function will return FALSE. This does not block Linea from operation, what action will be taken if devices mismatch depends on the program.

#### Parameters

<i>key</i>	32 bytes AES256 key
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if if Linea contains the same authentication key, FALSE otherwise

### 2.9.2.2 - (BOOL) cryptoAuthenticateHost: (NSData \*) key error:(NSError \*\*) error

#### Note

Check out the cryptoRawAuthenticateHost function, if you want to not use the key inside the mobile device.

Generates random data, uses the key to encrypt it, then sends to Linea to verify against it's internal authentication key. If both keys match, return value is TRUE. This function is used so that Linea knows a "real" device is currently connected, before allowing some functionality. Currently firmware update is protected by this function, once authentication key is set, you have to use it or cryptoRawAuthenticateHost before you attempt firmware update, or it will error out.

**Parameters**

<i>key</i>	32 bytes AES256 key
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if Linea contains the same authentication key, FALSE otherwise

### 2.9.2.3 - (BOOL) cryptoGetKeyVersion: (int) *keyID* keyVersion:(uint32\_t \*) *keyVersion* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Returns key version.

Valid key ID:

- KEY\_AUTHENTICATION - if set, you can use authentication functions - cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice or cryptoAuthenticateDevice. Firmware updates will require authentication too
- KEY\_ENCRYPTION - if set, magnetic card data will come encrypted via magneticCardEncryptedData or magneticCardEncryptedRawData

**Parameters**

<i>keyVersion</i>	returns key version or 0 if the key is not present (key versions are available in firmware 2.43 or later)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.9.2.4 - (NSData \*) cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice: (NSData \*) *randomData* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

**Note**

RAW crypto functions are harder to use and require more code, but are created to allow no secret keys to reside on the device, but all the operations can be executed with data, sent from a secure server. See crypto-AuthenticateDevice if you plan to use the key in the mobile device.

Encrypts a 16 bytes block of random data with the stored authentication key and returns the result.

The idea: if a program wants to work with specific Linea device, it sets AES256 authentication key once, then on every connect the program generates random 16 byte block of data, encrypts it internally with the said key, then encrypts it with linea too and compares the result. If that Linea contains no key, or the key is different, the resulting data will totally differ from the one generated. This does not block Linea from operation, what action will be taken if devices mismatch depends on the program.

**Parameters**

<i>randomData</i>	16 bytes block of data (presumably random bytes)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

random data, encrypted with the Linea authentication key if function succeeded, nil otherwise

**2.9.2.5 - (BOOL) cryptoRawAuthenticateHost: (NSData \*) encryptedRandomData error:(NSError \*\*) error****Note**

RAW crypto functions are harder to use and require more code, but are created to allow no secret keys to reside on the device, but all the operations can be executed with data, sent from a secure server. See cryptoAuthenticateHost if you plan to use the key in the mobile device.

Tries to decrypt random data, generated from cryptoRawGenerateRandomData with the stored internal authentication key and returns the result. This function is used so that Linea knows a "real" device is currently connected, before allowing some functionality. Currently firmware update is protected by this function, once authentication key is set, you have to use it or cryptoAuthenticateHost before you attempt firmware update, or it will error out.

The idea (considering the iOS device does not have the keys inside, but depends on server):

- (iOS program) generates random data using cryptoRawGenerateRandomData and sends to the server
- (Server) encrypts the random data with the same AES256 key that is in the Linea and sends back to the iOS program
- (iOS program) uses cryptoRawAuthenticateHost to authenticate with the data, function will error out if authentication fails.

**Parameters**

<i>encrypted-RandomData</i>	16 bytes block of encrypted data
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.9.2.6 - (NSData \*) cryptoRawGenerateRandomData: (NSError \*\*) error**

Generates 16 byte block of random numbers, required for some of the other crypto functions.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

16 bytes of random numbers if function succeeded, nil otherwise

**2.9.2.7 - (BOOL) cryptoRawSetKey: (int) keyID encryptedData:(NSData \*) encryptedData keyVersion:(uint32\_t) keyVersion keyFlags:(uint32\_t) keyFlags error:(NSError \*\*) error****Note**

RAW crypto functions are harder to use and require more code, but are created to allow no secret keys to reside on the device, but all the operations can be executed with data, sent from a secure server. See cryptoSetKey if you plan to use the key in the mobile device.

Used to store AES256 keys into Linea internal memory. Valid keys that can be set:

- KEY\_AUTHENTICATION - if set, you can use authentication functions - cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice or cryptoAuthenticateDevice. Firmware updates will require authentication too

- KEY\_ENCRYPTION - if set, magnetic card data will come encrypted via magneticCardEncryptedData or magneticCardEncryptedRawData

Generally the key loading process, using "Raw" commands, a program on the iOS device and a server which holds the keys will look similar to:

- (iOS program) calls cryptoRawGenerateRandomData to get 16 bytes block of random data and send these to the server
- (Server) creates byte array of 48 bytes consisting of: [RANDOM DATA: 16 bytes][KEY DATA: 32 bytes]
- (Server) if there is current encryption key set on the Linea (if you want to change existing key) the server encrypts the 48 bytes block with the OLD key
- (Server) sends the result data back to the program
- (iOS program) calls cryptoRawSetKey with KEY\_ENCRYPTION and the data it received from the server
- (Linea) tries to decrypt the key data if there was already key present, then extracts the key, verifies the random data and if everything is okay, sets the key

#### Parameters

<i>keyID</i>	the key type to set - KEY_AUTHENTICATION or KEY_ENCRYPTION
<i>encryptedData</i>	- 48 bytes that consists of 16 bytes random numbers received via call to cryptoRawGenerateRandomData and 32 byte AES256 key. If there has been previous key of the same type, then all 48 bytes should be encrypted with it.
<i>keyVersion</i>	- the version of the key. On firmware versions less than 2.43 this parameter is ignored and key version is considered to be 0x00000000. Key version is useful for the program to determine what key is inside the head.
<i>keyFlags</i>	- optional key flags, supported on ver 2.58 and onward

- KEY\_AUTHENTICATION:

BIT 1	If set to 1, scanning barcodes, reading magnetic card and using the bluetooth module are locked and have to be unlocked with cryptoAuthenticateHost/cryptoRawAuthenticateHost upon every reinsert of the device
-------	---

- KEY\_ENCRYPTION: No flags are supported

#### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.9.2.8** - (BOOL) cryptoSetKey: (int) *keyID* key:(NSData \*) *key* oldKey:(NSData \*) *oldKey* keyVersion:(uint32\_t) *keyVersion* keyFlags:(uint32\_t) *keyFlags* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Used to store AES256 keys into Linea internal memory.

Valid keys that can be set:

- KEY\_AUTHENTICATION - if set, you can use authentication functions - cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice or cryptoAuthenticateDevice. Firmware updates will require authentication too
- KEY\_ENCRYPTION - if set, magnetic card data will come encrypted via magneticCardEncryptedData or magneticCardEncryptedRawData

## Parameters

<i>keyID</i>	the key type to set - KEY_AUTHENTICATION or KEY_ENCRYPTION
<i>key</i>	32 bytes AES256 key to set
<i>oldKey</i>	32 bytes AES256 key that was previously used, or null if there was no previous key. The old key should match the new key, i.e. if you are setting KEY_ENCRYPTION, then you should pass the old KEY_ENCRYPTION.
<i>keyVersion</i>	- the version of the key. On firmware versions less than 2.43 this parameter is ignored and key version is considered to be 0x00000000. Key version is useful for the program to determine what key is inside the head.
<i>keyFlags</i>	- optional key flags, supported on ver 2.58 and onward

## • KEY\_AUTHENTICATION:

BIT 1	If set to 1, scanning barcodes, reading magnetic card and using the bluetooth module are locked and have to be unlocked with cryptoAuthenticate-Host/cryptoRawAuthenticateHost upon every reinsert of the device
-------	--

## • KEY\_ENCRYPTION: No flags are supported

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.10 Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions

Functions to work with encrypted magnetic head.

### Macros

- `#define LN_EMSR_EBASE -11000`
- `#define LN_EMSR_EINVALID_COMMAND LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x01`  
*Encrypted magnetic head invalid command sent.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_ENO_PERMISSION LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x02`  
*Encrypted magnetic head no permission error.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_ECARD LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x03`  
*Encrypted magnetic head card error.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_ESYNTAX LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x04`  
*Encrypted magnetic head command syntax error.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_ENO_RESPONSE LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x05`  
*Encrypted magnetic head command no response from the magnetic chip.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_ENO_DATA LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x06`  
*Encrypted magnetic head no data available.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_EINVALID_LENGTH LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x14`  
*Encrypted magnetic head invalid data length.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_ETAMPERED LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x15`  
*Encrypted magnetic head is tampered.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_EINVALID_SIGNATURE LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x16`  
*Encrypted magnetic head invalid signature.*
- `#define LN_EMSR_EHARDWARE LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x17`  
*Encrypted magnetic head hardware failure.*

### Functions

- (NSDictionary \*) - `DTDevices::emsrGetFirmwareInformation:error:`  
*Returns information about the specified head firmware data.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emsrIsTampered:error:`  
*Checks if the head was tampered or not.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emsrGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:`  
*Retrieves the key version (if any) of a loaded key.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emsrLoadInitialKey:error:`  
*Loads Terminal Master Key (TMK) or reenables after tampering.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emsrLoadKey:error:`  
*Loads new key, in plain or encrypted with already loaded AES256 Key Encryption Key (KEK).*
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::emsrGetDUKPTSerial:`  
*Returns DUKPT serial number, if DUKPT key is set.*
- (NSString \*) - `DTDevices::emsrGetDeviceModel:`  
*Returns head's model.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emsrGetFirmwareVersion:error:`  
*Returns head's firmware version as number MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emsrGetSecurityVersion:error:`  
*Returns head's security version as number MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.*
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::emsrGetSerialNumber:`  
*Return head's unique serial number as byte array.*



- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emsrUpdateFirmware:error:](#)  
*Performs firmware update on the encrypted head.*
- (NSArray \*) - [DTDevices::emsrGetSupportedEncryptions:](#)  
*Returns supported encryption algorithms by the encrypted head.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emsrSetEncryption:params:error:](#)  
*Selects the preferred encryption algorithm.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emsrConfigMaskedDataShowExpiration:unmaskedDigitsAtStart:unmaskedDigitsAtEnd:error:](#)  
*Fine-tunes which part of the card data will be masked, and which will be sent in clear text for display/print purposes.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emsrLoadRSAKeyPEM:version:error:](#)

### 2.10.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with encrypted magnetic head.

### 2.10.2 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 2.10.2.1 `#define LN_EMSR_ECARD LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x03`

Encrypted magnetic head card error.

#### 2.10.2.2 `#define LN_EMSR_EHARDWARE LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x17`

Encrypted magnetic head hardware failure.

#### 2.10.2.3 `#define LN_EMSR_EINVALID_COMMAND LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x01`

Encrypted magnetic head invalid command sent.

#### 2.10.2.4 `#define LN_EMSR_EINVALID_LENGTH LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x14`

Encrypted magnetic head invalid data length.

#### 2.10.2.5 `#define LN_EMSR_EINVALID_SIGNATURE LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x16`

Encrypted magnetic head invalid signature.

#### 2.10.2.6 `#define LN_EMSR_ENO_DATA LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x06`

Encrypted magnetic head no data available.

#### 2.10.2.7 `#define LN_EMSR_ENO_PERMISSION LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x02`

Encrypted magnetic head no permission error.

#### 2.10.2.8 `#define LN_EMSR_ENO_RESPONSE LN_EMSR_EBASE-0x05`

Encrypted magnetic head command no response from the magnetic chip.

#### 2.10.2.9 #define LN\_EMSR\_ESYNTAX LN\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x04

Encrypted magnetic head command syntax error.

#### 2.10.2.10 #define LN\_EMSR\_ETAMPERED LN\_EMSR\_EBASE-0x15

Encrypted magnetic head is tampered.

### 2.10.3 Function Documentation

#### 2.10.3.1 - (BOOL) emsrConfigMaskedDataShowExpiration: (BOOL) showExpiration unmaskedDigitsAtStart:(int) unmaskedDigitsAtStart unmaskedDigitsAtEnd:(int) unmaskedDigitsAtEnd error:(NSError \*\*) error

Fine-tunes which part of the card data will be masked, and which will be sent in clear text for display/print purposes.

##### Parameters

<i>showExpiration</i>	if set to TRUE, expiration date will be shown in clear text, otherwise will be masked
<i>unmaskedDigits-AtStart</i>	the number of digits to show in clear text at the start of the PAN, range from 0 to 6 (default is 4)
<i>unmaskedDigits-AtEnd</i>	the number of digits to show in clear text at the end of the PAN, range from 0, to 4 (default is 4)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

##### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.10.3.2 - (NSString \*) emsrGetDeviceModel: (NSError \*\*) error

Returns head's model.

##### Returns

head's model as string

##### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

##### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.10.3.3 - (NSData \*) emsrGetDUKPTSerial: (NSError \*\*) error

Returns DUKPT serial number, if DUKPT key is set.

##### Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

serial number or nil if an error occurred

**2.10.3.4 - (NSDictionary \*) emsrGetFirmwareInformation: (NSData \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Returns information about the specified head firmware data.

Based on it, and the current head's name and firmware version you can choose to update or not the head's firmware

**Parameters**

<i>data</i>	- firmware data
-------------	-----------------

**Returns**

dictionary containing extracted data or nil if the data is invalid. Keys contained are:

"deviceModel"	Head's model, for example "EMSR-DEA"
"firmwareRevision"	Firmware revision as string, for example 1.07
"firmwareRevisionNumber"	Firmware revision as number MAJOR*100+MINOR, i.e. 1.07 will be returned as 107

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.10.3.5 - (BOOL) emsrGetFirmwareVersion: (int \*) version error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Returns head's firmware version as number MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.

version 1.05 will be sent as 105

**Parameters**

<i>version</i>	integer, where firmware version is stored upon success
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.10.3.6 - (BOOL) emsrGetKeyVersion: (int) keyID keyVersion:(int \*) keyVersion error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Retrieves the key version (if any) of a loaded key.

**Parameters**

<i>keyID</i>	the ID of the key to get the version, one of the KEY_* constants
<i>keyVersion</i>	- pointer to integer, where key version will be returned upon success. Key version can be 0.
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.10.3.7 - (BOOL) emsrGetSecurityVersion: (int \*) version error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Returns head's security version as number MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.

version 1.05 will be sent as 105. Security version is the version of the certificated security kernel.

**Parameters**

<i>version</i>	integer, where firmware version is stored upon success
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.10.3.8 - (NSData \*) emsrGetSerialNumber: (NSError \*\*) error**

Return head's unique serial number as byte array.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

serial number or nil if an error occurred

**2.10.3.9 - (NSArray \*) emsrGetSupportedEncryptions: (NSError \*\*) error**

Returns supported encryption algorithms by the encrypted head.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

an array of supported algorithms or nil if an error occurred

**2.10.3.10 - (BOOL) emsrlsTampered: (BOOL \*) tampered error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Checks if the head was tampered or not.

If the head's tamper protection have activated, the device should be sent to service for checks

**Returns**

true if the head was tampered and not operational

**2.10.3.11 - (BOOL) emsrLoadInitialKey: (NSData \*) keyData error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Loads Terminal Master Key (TMK) or reenables after tampering.

This command is enabled only if the device is in tamper mode or there is no TMK key yet. If the command is executed in normal mode an error will be returned. To reenables the device after tampering the old TMK key must be passed as an argument. If the keys do not match error will be returned.

**Parameters**

<i>keyData</i>	an array, that consists of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BLOCK IDENT - 1 byte, set to 0x29</li> <li>• KEY ID - the ID of the key to set, put KEY_TMK_AES (0x10)</li> <li>• KEY VERSION - the version of the key in high to low order, 4 bytes, cannot be 0</li> <li>• KEY - the key data, 16 bytes</li> <li>• HASH - SHA256 of the previous bytes (BLOCK IDENT, KEY ID, KEY VERSION and KEY)</li> </ul>
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.10.3.12 - (BOOL) emsrLoadKey: (NSData \*) keyData error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Loads new key, in plain or encrypted with already loaded AES256 Key Encryption Key (KEK).

Plain text loading works only the first time the specified key is loaded and is recommended only in secure environment. For normal usage the new key should be encrypted with the Key Encryption Key (KEK). The command is unavailable if the device is tampered.

## Parameters

<i>keyData</i>	an array, that consists of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MAGIC NUMBER - (1 byte) 0x2b</li> <li>• ENCRYPTION KEY ID - (1 byte) the ID of the already existing key, used to encrypt the new key data. Set it to KEY_EH_AES256_LOADING (0x02) if you want to set the key in encrypted state or 0xFF for plain state.</li> <li>• KEY ID - (1 byte) the ID of the key to set, one of the KEY_ constants. The TMK cannot be changed with this command.</li> <li>• KEY VERSION - (4 bytes) the version of the key in high to low order, 4 bytes, cannot be 0</li> <li>• KEY - (variable) the key data, length depends on the key in question, AES256 keys are 32 bytes, DUKPT key is 16 bytes key, 10 bytes serial, 6 bytes for padding (zeroes)</li> <li>• HASH - SHA256 of the previous bytes (MAGIC NUMBER, ENCRYPTION KEY ID, KEY ID, KEY VERSION, KEY)</li> </ul>
----------------	---

If using KEY\_EH\_AES256\_LOADING, then KEY + HASH have to be put inside the packet encrypted with AES256 using key KEY\_EH\_AES256\_LOADING. SHA256 is calculated on the unencrypted data. The head decrypts the data and then calculates and compares the hash. If the calculated SHA does not match the SHA sent with the command, the key exchange is rejected and error is returned.

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.10.3.13 - (BOOL) emsrSetEncryption: (int) *encryption* params:(NSData \*) *params* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Selects the preferred encryption algorithm.

When card is swiped, it will be encrypted by it and sent via magneticCardEncryptedData delegate

## Parameters

<i>encryption</i>	encryption algorithm used, one of the ALG_* constants
<i>params</i>	optional algorithm parameters, currently no algorithm supports these
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.10.3.14 - (BOOL) emsrUpdateFirmware: (NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs firmware update on the encrypted head.

DO NOT INTERRUPT THE COMMUNICATION DURING THE FIRMWARE UPDATE!

## Parameters

<i>data</i>	firmware file data
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.11 RF Reader Functions

Functions to work with the RF cards reader.

### Macros

- #define `CARD_SUPPORT_TYPE_A` 0x0001  
*ISO14443 Type A (Mifare) cards will be detected.*
- #define `CARD_SUPPORT_TYPE_B` 0x0002  
*ISO14443 Type B cards will be detected.*
- #define `CARD_SUPPORT_FELICA` 0x0004  
*Felica cards will be detected.*
- #define `CARD_SUPPORT_NFC` 0x0008  
*NFC cards will be detected.*
- #define `CARD_SUPPORT_JEWEL` 0x0010  
*Jewel cards will be detected.*
- #define `CARD_SUPPORT_ISO15` 0x0020  
*ISO15693 cards will be detected.*

### Functions

- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::rfInit:error:`  
*Initializes and powers on the RF card reader module.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::rfClose:`  
*Powers down RF card reader module.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::rfRemoveCard:error:`  
*Call this function once you are done with the card, a delegate call `rfCardRemoved` will be called when the card leaves the RF field and new card is ready to be detected.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::mfAuthByKey:type:address:key:error:`  
*Authenticate mifare card block with direct key data.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::mfStoreKeyIndex:type:key:error:`  
*Store key in the internal module memory for later use.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::mfAuthByStoredKey:type:address:keyIndex:error:`  
*Authenticate mifare card block with previously stored key.*
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::mfRead:address:length:error:`  
*Reads one more more blocks of data from Mifare Classic/Ultralight cards.*
- (int) - `DTDevices::mfWrite:address:data:error:`  
*Writes one more more blocks of data to Mifare Classic/Ultralight cards.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::mfUlcSetKey:key:error:`  
*Sets the 3DES key of Mifare Ultralight C cards.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::mfUlcAuthByKey:key:error:`  
*Performs 3DES authentication of Mifare Ultralight C card using the given key.*
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::iso15693Read:startBlock:length:error:`  
*Reads one more more blocks of data from ISO 15693 card.*
- (int) - `DTDevices::iso15693Write:startBlock:data:error:`  
*Writes one more more blocks of data to ISO 15693 card.*
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::iso15693GetBlocksSecurityStatus:startBlock:nBlocks:error:`  
*Reads the security status of one more more blocks from ISO 15693 card.*
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::iso15693LockBlock:block:error:`  
*Locks a single ISO 15693 card block.*



- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::iso15693WriteAFI:afi:error:](#)  
*Changes ISO 15693 card AFI.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::iso15693LockAFI:error:](#)  
*Locks ISO 15693 AFI preventing further changes.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::iso15693WriteDSFID:dsfid:error:](#)  
*Changes ISO 15693 card DSFID.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::iso15693LockDSFID:error:](#)  
*Locks ISO 15693 card DSFID preventing further changes.*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::felicaRead:startBlock:length:error:](#)  
*Reads one more more blocks of data from FeliCa card.*
- (int) - [DTDevices::felicaWrite:startBlock:data:error:](#)  
*Writes one more more blocks of data to FeliCa card.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagGetBatteryStatus:status:error:](#)  
*Returns FeliCa SmartTag battery status.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagClearScreen:error:](#)  
*Clears the screen of FeliCa SmartTag.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagDrawImage:image:topLeftX:topLeftY:drawMode:layout:error:](#)  
*Draws image on FeliCa SmartTag's screen.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagSaveLayout:layout:error:](#)  
*Saves the current display as layout number.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagDisplayLayout:layout:error:](#)  
*Displays previously stored layout.*
- (int) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagWrite:address:data:error:](#)  
*Writes data in FeliCa SmartTag.*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagRead:address:length:error:](#)  
*Writes data in FeliCa SmartTag.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::felicaSmartTagWaitCompletion:error:](#)  
*Waits for FeliCa SmartTag to complete current operation.*

### 2.11.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with the RF cards reader.

### 2.11.2 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 2.11.2.1 `#define CARD_SUPPORT_JEWEL 0x0010`

Jewel cards will be detected.

Currently unsupported.

#### 2.11.2.2 `#define CARD_SUPPORT_NFC 0x0008`

NFC cards will be detected.

Currently unsupported.

#### 2.11.2.3 `#define CARD_SUPPORT_TYPE_B 0x0002`

ISO14443 Type B cards will be detected.

Currently unsupported.

### 2.11.3 Function Documentation

2.11.3.1 - (NSData \*) felicaRead: (int) *cardIndex* startBlock:(int) *startBlock* length:(int) *length* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Reads one more more blocks of data from FeliCa card.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>startBlock</i>	the starting block to read from
<i>length</i>	the number of bytes to read, this must be multiple of block size (can be taken from the card info that is coming with rfCardDetected call)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

NSData object containing the data received or nil if an error occurred

2.11.3.2 - (BOOL) felicaSmartTagClearScreen: (int) *cardIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Clears the screen of FeliCa SmartTag.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>status</i>	upon successful execution, battery status will be returned here, one of FELICA_SMARTTAG-_BATTERY_* constants
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

2.11.3.3 - (BOOL) felicaSmartTagDisplayLayout: (int) *cardIndex* layout:(int) *layout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Displays previously stored layout.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>layout</i>	layout index (1-12) of the previously stored image
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

2.11.3.4 - (BOOL) felicaSmartTagDrawImage: (int) *cardIndex* image:(UIImage \*) *image* topLeftX:(int) *topLeftX* topLeftY:(int) *topLeftY* drawMode:(int) *drawMode* layout:(int) *layout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Draws image on FeliCa SmartTag's screen.

The screen is 200x96 pixels.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>image</i>	image to draw
<i>topLeftX</i>	- topleft X coordinate in pixels
<i>topLeftY</i>	- topleft Y coordinate in pixels
<i>drawMode</i>	draw mode, one of the FELICA_SMARTTAG_DRAW_* constants
<i>layout</i>	only used when drawMode is FELICA_SMARTTAG_DRAW_USE_LAYOUT, it specifies the index of the layout (1-12) of the previously stored image
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.5 - (BOOL) felicaSmartTagGetBatteryStatus: (int) cardIndex status:(int \*) status error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Returns FeliCa SmartTag battery status.

#### Note

Call this function before any other SmartTag

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>status</i>	upon successful execution, battery status will be returned here, one of FELICA_SMARTTAG_BATTERY_* constants
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.6 - (NSData \*) felicaSmartTagRead: (int) cardIndex address:(int) address length:(int) length error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Writes data in FeliCa SmartTag.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>address</i>	the address of the card to read from, refer to SmartTag documentation
<i>length</i>	of the data to read, note that the data does not need to be aligned to block size
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

NSData object containing the data received or nil if an error occurred

### 2.11.3.7 - (BOOL) felicaSmartTagSaveLayout: (int) *cardIndex* layout:(int) *layout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Saves the current display as layout number.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>layout</i>	layout index (1-12) to which the currently displayed image will be saved
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.8 - (BOOL) felicaSmartTagWaitCompletion: (int) *cardIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Waits for FeliCa SmartTag to complete current operation.

Waiting is generally not needed, but needed in case for example drawing an image and then saving the layout, you need to wait for the image to be drawn. Write operation forces waiting internally.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.9 - (int) felicaSmartTagWrite: (int) *cardIndex* address:(int) *address* data:(NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Writes data in FeliCa SmartTag.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>address</i>	the address of the card to write to, refer to SmartTag documentation
<i>data</i>	data to write, note that the data does not need to be aligned to block size
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

number of bytes actually written or 0 if an error occurred

### 2.11.3.10 - (int) felicaWrite: (int) *cardIndex* startBlock:(int) *startBlock* data:(NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Writes one more more blocks of data to FeliCa card.

## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>startBlock</i>	the starting block to write to
<i>data</i>	the data to write, it must be multiple of block size (can be taken from the card info that is coming with rfCardDetected call)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

number of bytes actually written or 0 if an error occurred

**2.11.3.11 - (NSData \*) iso15693GetBlocksSecurityStatus: (int) *cardIndex* startBlock:(int) *startBlock* nBlocks:(int) *nBlocks* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Reads the security status of one more more blocks from ISO 15693 card.

## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>startBlock</i>	the starting block to read from
<i>nBlocks</i>	the number of blocks to get the security status
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

NSData object containing the data received or nil if an error occurred

**2.11.3.12 - (BOOL) iso15693LockAFI: (int) *cardIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Locks ISO 15693 AFI preventing further changes.

## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.13 - (BOOL) iso15693LockBlock: (int) *cardIndex* block:(int) *block* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Locks a single ISO 15693 card block.

Locked blocks cannot be written upon anymore.

## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>block</i>	the block index to lock
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.14 - (BOOL) iso15693LockDSFID: (int) *cardIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Locks ISO 15693 card DSFID preventing further changes.

**Parameters**

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.15 - (NSData \*) iso15693Read: (int) *cardIndex* startBlock:(int) *startBlock* length:(int) *length* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Reads one more more blocks of data from ISO 15693 card.

**Parameters**

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>startBlock</i>	the starting block to read from
<i>length</i>	the number of bytes to read, this must be multiple of block size (can be taken from the card info that is coming with rfCardDetected call)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

NSData object containing the data received or nil if an error occurred

### 2.11.3.16 - (int) iso15693Write: (int) *cardIndex* startBlock:(int) *startBlock* data:(NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Writes one more more blocks of data to ISO 15693 card.

**Parameters**

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>startBlock</i>	the starting block to write to
<i>data</i>	the data to write, it must be multiple of block size (can be taken from the card info that is coming with rfCardDetected call)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

number of bytes actually written or 0 if an error occurred

### 2.11.3.17 - (BOOL) iso15693WriteAFI: (int) *cardIndex* afi:(uint8\_t) *afi* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Changes ISO 15693 card AFI.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>afi</i>	new AFI value
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.18 - (BOOL) iso15693WriteDSFID: (int) *cardIndex* dsfid:(uint8\_t) *dsfid* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Changes ISO 15693 card DSFID.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>dsfid</i>	new DSFID value
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.19 - (BOOL) mfAuthByKey: (int) *cardIndex* type:(char) *type* address:(int) *address* key:(NSData \*) *key* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Authenticate mifare card block with direct key data.

This is less secure method, as it requires the key to be present in the program, the preferred way is to store a key once in a secure environment and then authenticate using the stored key.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>type</i>	key type, either 'A' or 'B'
<i>address</i>	the address of the block to authenticate
<i>key</i>	6 bytes key
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.11.3.20 - (BOOL) mfAuthByStoredKey: (int) *cardIndex* type:(char) *type* address:(int) *address* keyIndex:(int) *keyIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Authenticate mifare card block with previously stored key.

This the preferred method, as no key needs to reside in application.

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>type</i>	key type, either 'A' or 'B'
<i>address</i>	the address of the block to authenticate
<i>keyIndex</i>	the index of the stored key, you can have up to 8 keys stored (0-7)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.21** - (NSData \*) mfRead: (int) *cardIndex* address:(int) *address* length:(int) *length* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Reads one more more blocks of data from Mifare Classic/Ultralight cards.

A single read operation gets 16 bytes of data, so you can pass 32 on length to read 2 blocks, etc

#### Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>address</i>	the address of the block to read
<i>length</i>	the number of bytes to read, this must be multiple of block size (16 bytes)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

NSData object containing the data received or nil if an error occurred

**2.11.3.22** - (BOOL) mfStoreKeyIndex: (int) *keyIndex* type:(char) *type* key:(NSData \*) *key* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Store key in the internal module memory for later use.

#### Parameters

<i>keyIndex</i>	the index of the key, you can have up to 8 keys stored (0-7)
<i>type</i>	key type, either 'A' or 'B'
<i>key</i>	6 bytes key
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

#### Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.23** - (BOOL) mfUlcAuthByKey: (int) *cardIndex* key:(NSData \*) *key* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Performs 3DES authentication of Mifare Ultralight C card using the given key.



## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>key</i>	16 bytes 3DES key to authenticate with
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.11.3.24 - (BOOL) mfUlcSetKey: (int) *cardIndex* key:(NSData \*) *key* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Sets the 3DES key of Mifare Ultralight C cards.

## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>key</i>	16 bytes 3DES key to set
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.11.3.25 - (int) mfWrite: (int) *cardIndex* address:(int) *address* data:(NSData \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Writes one more more blocks of data to Mifare Classic/Ultralight cards.

A single write operation stores 16 bytes of data, so you can pass 32 on length to write 2 blocks, etc

## Parameters

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>address</i>	the address of the block to write
<i>data</i>	the data to write, must be multiple of the block size (16 bytes)
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

## Returns

number of bytes actually written or 0 if an error occurred

#### 2.11.3.26 - (BOOL) rfClose: (NSError \*\*) *error*

Powers down RF card reader module.

Call this function after you are done with the reader.

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.27 - (BOOL) rfInit: (int) *supportedCards* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Initializes and powers on the RF card reader module.

Call this function before any other RF card functions. The module power consumption is highly optimized, so it can be left on for extended periods of time.

**Parameters**

<i>supportedCards</i>	any combination of CARD_SUPPORT_* flags to mark which card types to be active. Enable only cards you actually plan to work with, this has high implication on power usage and detection speed.
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.11.3.28 - (BOOL) rfRemoveCard: (int) *cardIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Call this function once you are done with the card, a delegate call rfCardRemoved will be called when the card leaves the RF field and new card is ready to be detected.

**Parameters**

<i>cardIndex</i>	the index of the card as sent by rfCardDetected delegate call
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.12 SmartCard Functions

This section includes functions to access SmartCard module and operate with SmartCards.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::scInit:error:](#)  
*Initializes SmartCard module.*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::scCardPowerOn:error:](#)  
*Powers on the SmartCard, resets it and returns ATR (Answer To Reset).*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::scCardPowerOff:error:](#)  
*Powers off SmartCard, call this function when you are done with the card.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::scIsCardPresent:error:](#)  
*Manually checks if there is a card in the reader.*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::scCAPDU:apdu:error:](#)  
*Performs APDU command in the card.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::scClose:error:](#)  
*Shuts down SmartCard module.*

### 2.12.1 Detailed Description

This section includes functions to access SmartCard module and operate with SmartCards.

### 2.12.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.12.2.1 - (NSData \*) scCAPDU: (SC\_SLOTS) slot apdu:(NSData \*) apdu error:(NSError \*\*) error

Performs APDU command in the card.

#### Parameters

<i>slot</i>	- which slot you want to operate with, one of:	
	SLOT_MAIN	main SmartCard slot
	SLOT_SAM	SAM module slot
<i>apdu</i>	- the APDU command	
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

#### Returns

APDU response data if function succeeded, nil otherwise

#### 2.12.2.2 - (BOOL) scCardPowerOff: (SC\_SLOTS) slot error:(NSError \*\*) error

Powers off SmartCard, call this function when you are done with the card.

#### Parameters

<i>slot</i>	- which slot you want to operate with, one of:	
	SLOT_MAIN	main SmartCard slot
	SLOT_SAM	SAM module slot
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.12.2.3 - (NSData \*) scCardPowerOn: (SC\_SLOTS) slot error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Powers on the SmartCard, resets it and returns ATR (Answer To Reset).

Call this function before you perform any APDU commands

**Parameters**

<i>slot</i>	- which slot you want to operate with, one of:	
	SLOT_MAIN	main SmartCard slot
	SLOT_SAM	SAM module slot
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

ATR response data if function succeeded or nil otherwise

**2.12.2.4 - (BOOL) scClose: (SC\_SLOTS) slot error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Shuts down SmartCard module.

**Parameters**

<i>slot</i>	- which slot you want to operate with, one of:	
	SLOT_MAIN	main SmartCard slot
	SLOT_SAM	SAM module slot
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.12.2.5 - (BOOL) scInit: (SC\_SLOTS) slot error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Initializes SmartCard module.

Call this function before any other SmartCard related one. Without initialization, no SmartCard events will be fired.

**Parameters**

<i>slot</i>	- which slot you want to operate with, one of:	
	SLOT_MAIN	main SmartCard slot
	SLOT_SAM	SAM module slot
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.12.2.6 - (BOOL) sclsCardPresent: (SC\_SLOTS) slot error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Manually checks if there is a card in the reader.

**Parameters**

<i>slot</i>	- which slot you want to operate with, one of:	
	SLOT_MAIN	main SmartCard slot
	SLOT_SAM	SAM module slot
<i>error</i>	pointer to NSError object, where error information is stored in case function fails. You can pass nil if you don't want that information	

**Returns**

TRUE if card is present, FALSE otherwise

## 2.13 Pinpad functions

Specific functions to work with the pinpad - entering and getting pin data, managing keys.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::ppadStartPINEntry:startY:timeout:echoChar:message:error:](#)  
*Initiates asynchronous PIN entry procedure.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::ppadCancelPINEntry:](#)  
*Tries to cancel asynchronous PIN entry procedure.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::ppadMagneticCardEntry:timeout:error:](#)  
*Initiates synchronous magnetic card entry procedure.*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::ppadGetPINBlockUsingFixedKey:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:](#)  
*Gets encrypted pin data using pre-loaded 3DES key The returned data consists of:*
- (NSData \*) - [DTDevices::pinGetPINBlockUsingDUKPT:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:](#)  
*Gets encrypted pin data using DUKPT.*
- (DTKeyInfo \*) - [DTDevices::ppadGetKeyInfo:error:](#)  
*Gets information about some of the keys loaded in the pinpad.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::ppadSetButtonCaption:caption:error:](#)  
*Sets the text that is drawn above functional buttons in MPED400.*

### 2.13.1 Detailed Description

Specific functions to work with the pinpad - entering and getting pin data, managing keys.

### 2.13.2 Function Documentation

**2.13.2.1** - (NSData \*) [pinGetPINBlockUsingDUKPT:](#) (int) *dukptKeyID* [keyVariant:](#)(NSData \*) *keyVariant* [pinFormat:](#)(int) *pinFormat* [error:](#)(NSError \*\*) *error*

Gets encrypted pin data using DUKPT.

The returned data consists of:

- DUKPT/3DES Encrypted PIN code, according to the selected format (8 bytes)
- Current Key Serial Number (10 bytes)

#### Parameters

<i>dukptKeyID</i>	- DUKPT key ID (0-1)
<i>keyVariant</i>	16 bytes of data, that is XOR-ed with the key before encrypting. Pass nil if you don't want that.
<i>pinFormat</i>	PIN format, one of the PIN_FORMAT_* constants, according to ISO 9564
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

key information object upon success, nil otherwise

**2.13.2.2** - (BOOL) [ppadCancelPINEntry:](#) (NSError \*\*) *error*

Tries to cancel asynchronous PIN entry procedure.

Current pinpad versions do not have native support for async PIN, so this function always returns an error, but it will be implemented in the future.

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.13.2.3 - (DTKeyInfo \*) ppadGetKeyInfo: (int) *keyID* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Gets information about some of the keys loaded in the pinpad.

## Parameters

<i>keyID</i>	- key ID (1-49)
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

key information object upon success, nil otherwise

### 2.13.2.4 - (NSData \*) ppadGetPINBlockUsingFixedKey: (int) *fixedKeyID* keyVariant:(NSData \*) *keyVariant* pinFormat:(int) *pinFormat* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Gets encrypted pin data using pre-loaded 3DES key The returned data consists of:

- 3DES Encrypted PIN code, according to the selected format (8 bytes)

## Parameters

<i>fixedKeyID</i>	- key ID (1-49)
<i>keyVariant</i>	16 bytes of data, that is XOR-ed with the key before encrypting. Pass nil if you don't want that.
<i>pinFormat</i>	PIN format, one of the PIN_FORMAT_* constants, according to ISO 9564
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

key information object upon success, nil otherwise

### 2.13.2.5 - (BOOL) ppadMagneticCardEntry: (int) *language* timeout:(int) *timeout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Initiates synchronous magnetic card entry procedure.

The magnetic card data is stored encrypted and protected inside the pinpad. After successful operation card data is sent like any other card read operation - via magneticCardEncryptedData with the encryption selected via emsr-SetEncryption. This function is blocking and can take up to timeout seconds, so make sure to call it on a thread or dispatch\_async

## Parameters

<i>language</i>	- the language to display prompt on, one of the LANG_* constants
<i>startY</i>	- Y coordinate in characters from the top of the defined window where the PIN entry prompt will be drawn
<i>timeout</i>	- timeout in seconds waiting for the user to enter the card data (10-180)
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.13.2.6 - (BOOL) ppadSetButtonCaption: (int) *buttonIndex* caption:(NSString \*) *caption* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Sets the text that is drawn above functional buttons in MPED400.

**Parameters**

<i>buttonIndex</i>	- functional button index (1-3)
<i>caption</i>	- text to display
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

### 2.13.2.7 - (BOOL) ppadStartPINEntry: (int) *startX* *startY*:(int) *startY* timeout:(int) *timeout* echoChar:(char) *echoChar* message:(NSString \*) *message* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Initiates asynchronous PIN entry procedure.

The PIN is stored encrypted and protected inside the pinpad. This function is not blocking, it passes the answer via delegate. Currently this function calls internal synchronous function from a thread and notifies about the result, but future firmware versions will have native support where you can cancel pin entry too.

**Parameters**

<i>startX</i>	- X coordinate in characters from the left end of the defined window where the PIN entry prompt will be drawn
<i>startY</i>	- Y coordinate in characters from the top of the defined window where the PIN entry prompt will be drawn
<i>timeout</i>	- timeout in seconds waiting for the user to enter the pin (10-180)
<i>echoChar</i>	- symbol used to mark the pin digits, allowed are '*', '+' or '-'
<i>message</i>	- text to be displayed to the user. You can use <CR> to move the cursor to the next line.
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise



## 2.14 EMV Kernel

EMV Level 2 kernel functions, structures and definitions.

### Modules

- [EMV Operation Workflow](#)  
*Description and block diagrams of various operations with the pinpad.*
- [EMV TAGs](#)  
*EMV TAGs you can use with their properties.*
- [EMV Status Codes](#)  
*These status codes are returned from every EMV function to indicate the result of it.*
- [Transaction Start](#)  
*This section includes the command used to start the transaction: ATR validation and application selection.*
- [Transaction Processing](#)  
*This section covers the different phases of the transaction:*  
*Initial process*  
*Data reading*  
*Card data authentication*  
*Restrictions processing*  
*Risk Control*  
*Cardholder authentication*  
*Certificate generation*  
*Make Transaction decision*  
*Make default decision.*
- [Issuer Authentication](#)  
*The commands listed here are intended to process the data coming from the issuer as part of the response to the online authorization request.*
- [General Commands](#)  
*These commands are not part of the basic transaction management but provide the kernel with more flexibility, and can be used by the application for its own particular requirements.*
- [Data Access](#)  
*The commands described below are used to access the data items used by the kernel.*

### Macros

- `#define EMV_STRUCTURES_DEFINED`
- `#define TVR_DEFAULT_TDOL_USED 0x0508`  
*This is the list of the bits of the TVR that can be checked or updated.*
- `#define TVR_ISSUER_AUTH_FAILED 0x0507`
- `#define TVR_SCRIPT_FAIL_BEFORE_AC 0x0506`
- `#define TVR_SCRIPT_FAIL_AFTER_AC 0x0505`
- `#define TVR_TERMINAL_LIMIT_EXCEEDED 0x0408`
- `#define TVR_LOWER_OFF_LIMIT_EXCEEDED 0x0407`
- `#define TVR_UPPER_OFF_LIMIT_EXCEEDED 0x0406`
- `#define TVR_RANDOM_SELECTION_ONLINE 0x0405`
- `#define TVR_MERCHANT_FORCE_ONLINE 0x0404`
- `#define TVR_CARDHOLDER_VERIF_FAILURE 0x0308`
- `#define TVR_VERIF_METHOD_UNKNOWN 0x0307`
- `#define TVR_PIN_LIMIT_EXCEEDED 0x0306`
- `#define TVR_PIN_ASKED_PINPAD_FAILURE 0x0305`
- `#define TVR_PIN_ASKED_BUT_NOT_ENTERED 0x0304`
- `#define TVR_ONLINE_PIN_ENTERED 0x0303`

- #define TVR\_SOFTWARE\_VERSIONS 0x0208
- #define TVR\_APPLICATION\_EXPIRED 0x0207
- #define TVR\_APPLICATION\_NOT\_EFFECTIVE 0x0206
- #define TVR\_REQ\_SERVICE\_NOT\_ALLOWED 0x0205
- #define TVR\_NEW\_CARD 0x0204
- #define TVR\_OFFDATA\_AUTH\_NOT\_DONE 0x0108
- #define TVR\_STATIC\_AUTH\_FAILED 0x0107
- #define TVR\_DATA\_NOT\_FOUND 0x0106
- #define TVR\_CARD\_IN\_HOT\_LIST 0x0105
- #define TVR\_DYNAMIC\_AUTH\_FAILED 0x0104
- #define TVR\_COMBINED\_DDA\_FAILED 0x0103
- #define TSI\_OFFDATA\_AUTH\_DONE 0x0108

*This is the list of the bits of the TSI that can be checked or updated.*

- #define TSI\_CARDHOLDER\_VERIF\_DONE 0x0107
- #define TSI\_CARD\_RISK\_DONE 0x0106
- #define TSI\_ISSUER\_AUTH\_DONE 0x0105
- #define TSI\_TERMINAL\_RISK\_DONE 0x0104
- #define TSI\_SCRIPT\_PROCESS\_DONE 0x0103

## Enumerations

- enum APP\_SELECTION\_METHODS { SELECTION\_PSE =0, SELECTION\_AIDLIST }
- enum APP\_MATCH\_CRITERIAS { MATCH\_FULL =1, MATCH\_PARTIAL\_VISA, MATCH\_PARTIAL\_EUROPAY }
- enum AUTH\_RESULTS { AUTH\_RESULT\_SUCCESS =1, AUTH\_RESULT\_FAILURE, AUTH\_FAIL\_PIN\_ENTRY\_NOT\_DONE, AUTH\_FAIL\_USER\_CANCELLATION }
- enum BYPASS\_MODES { BYPASS\_CURRENT\_METHOD\_MODE =0, BYPASS\_ALL\_METHODS\_MODE }
- enum CERTIFICATE\_AC\_TYPES { CERTIFICATE\_AAC =0, CERTIFICATE\_TC, CERTIFICATE\_ARQC }
- enum CARD\_RISK\_TYPES { CDOL\_1 =1, CDOL\_2 }
- enum TAG\_TYPES { TAG\_TYPE\_BINARY =0, TAG\_TYPE\_BCD, TAG\_TYPE\_STRING }

### 2.14.1 Detailed Description

EMV Level 2 kernel functions, structures and definitions. **Kernel initialisation and version verification**

Firstly the application will have to initialise the library, this will only have to be done once at the unit power up. At the same time it will be convenient also to check the version info provided by the kernel to make sure that is the expected one.

After the initialisation, the first thing to do will be to set all the data items needed to start the transaction, mainly these items correspond to configuration issues:

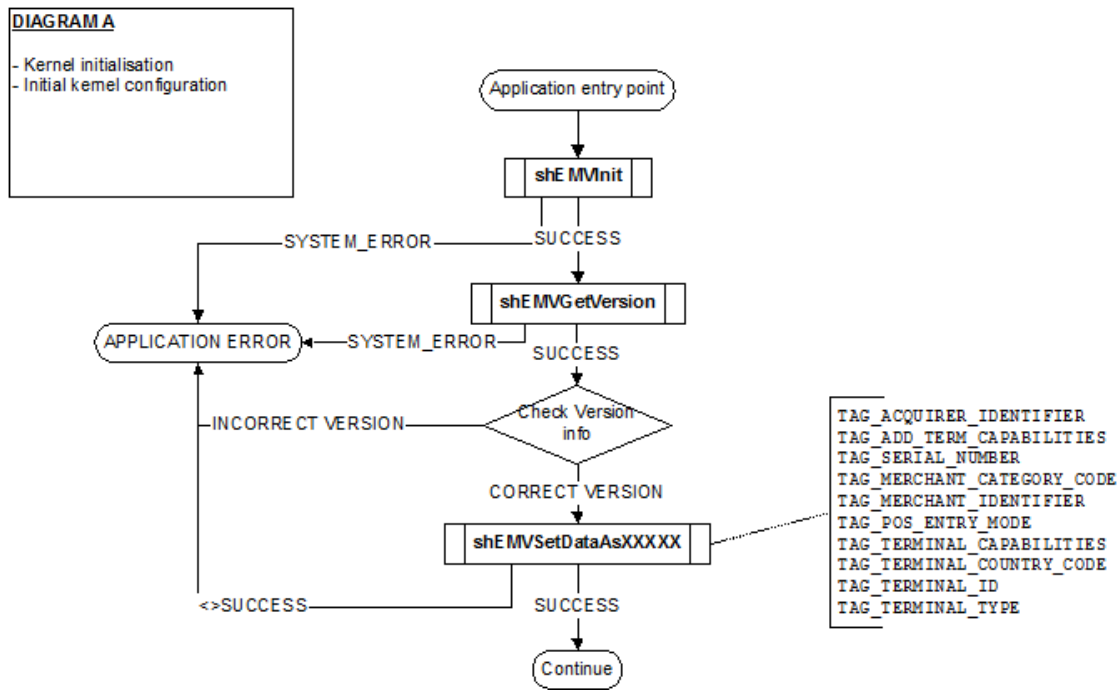


Figure 2.1: Kernel initialisation and version verification

### Card recognition and ATR validation

The application will be in charge of detecting the presence of the smart card in the reader using the corresponding firmware function call, the application must power on the card also, the kernel is used in this phase to validate the ATR got from the card.

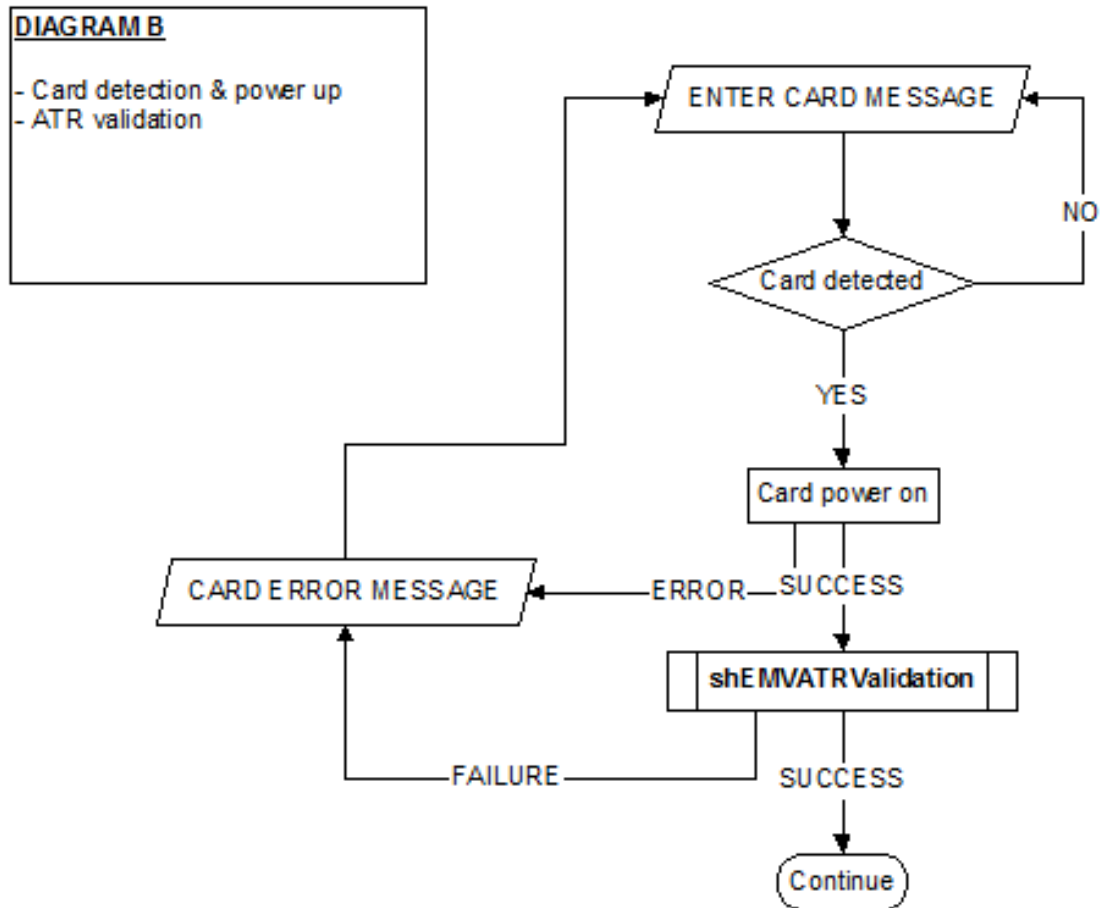


Figure 2.2: Card recognition and ATR validation

### Application selection & initiation

Once the card has been powered on and the ATR validated to ensure that is a valid EMV card, the next step is to proceed with the application selection and initiation.

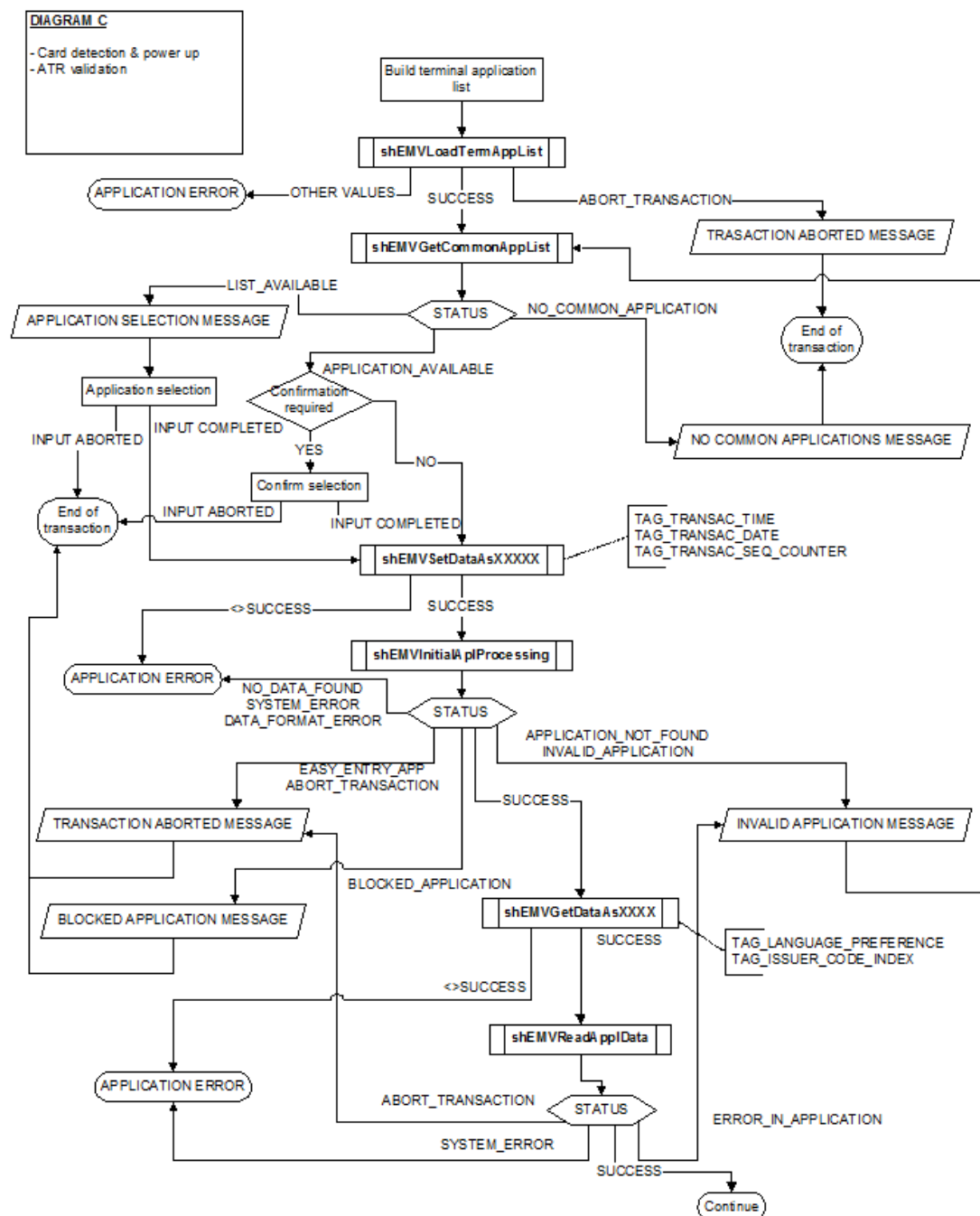


Figure 2.3: Application selection &amp; initiation

### Transaction data processing

Next the rest of the EMV transaction phases will be completed prior to the transaction decision, this includes:

Card data authentication.

Restrictions processing.

Risk control.

Cardholder verification.

For the card data authentication process the function `shEMVAuthentication` is called with the amount detection flag set to `FALSE` because it's assumed that the amount was already entered and is available for the application, if that's not the case if the application wants to use the actual value for the amount can enable this flag and provide the

amount if requested during the dynamic authentication.

If the application is not offline enabled the call to the function shEMVTerminalRisk can be made without setting the data previously as shown in the diagram.

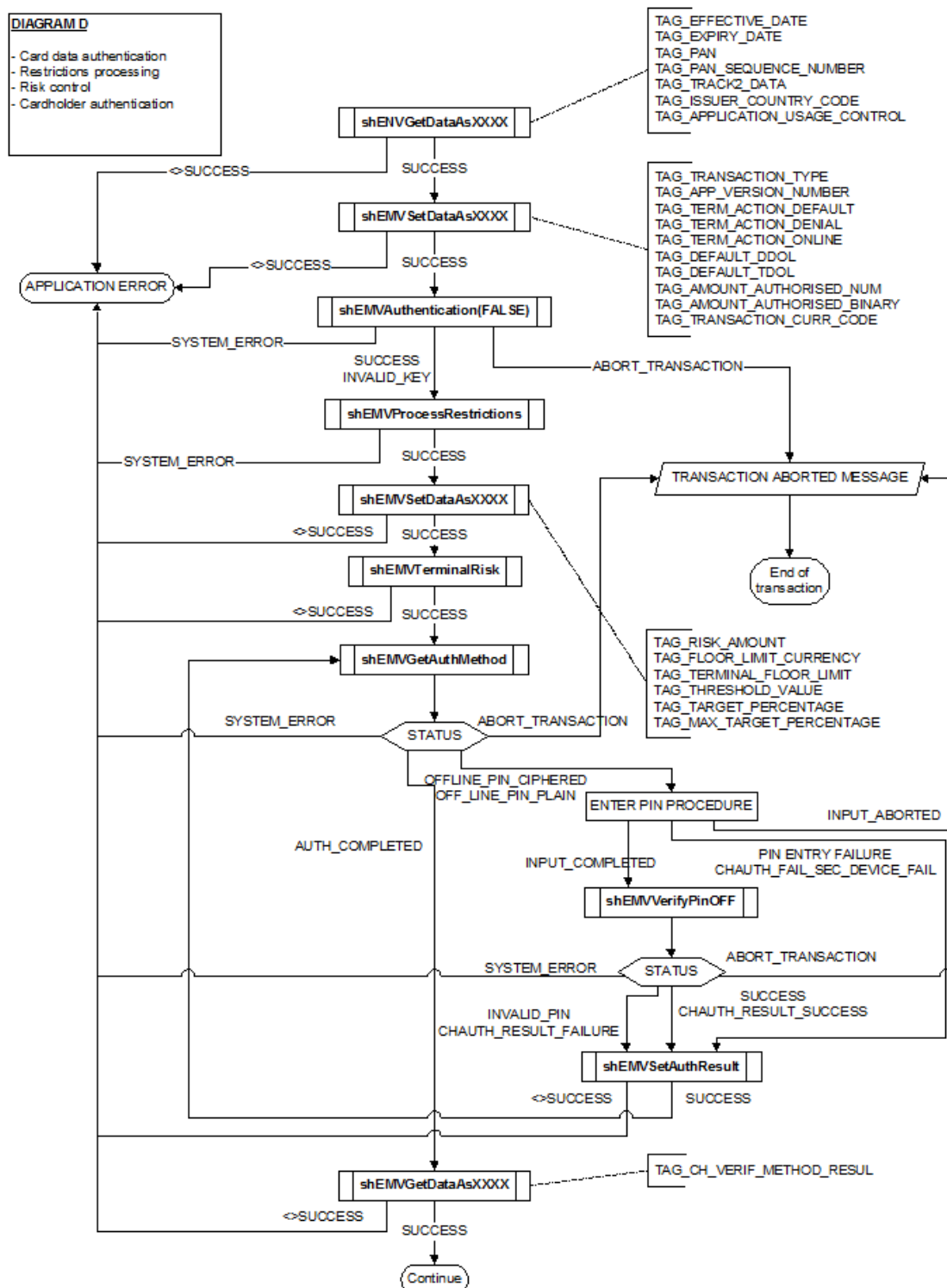


Figure 2.4: Data authentication process

### Application transaction decision

At this point of the transaction, it's where the first decision is made. All the previous procedures results have been

reflected on the TVR & TSI, and in this case the former is used to determine what type of transaction will be carried out from here.

Additionally for offline applications it will be necessary to check if the card is in the host list, if so the appropriate TVR bit must be updated.

The “offline possible” verification normally consists of a validation of the transactions log to ensure that the application can store the transaction data properly as well as any additional validation such as BIN control.

If the application has online only capabilities the result TRANSACTION\_APPROVED should never be received as the response to the shEMVMakeTransDecision call, anyhow if this happens the transaction should be considered denied.

Once the cryptogram has been generated, it's necessary to check its type according to the original requested type. So, it's not acceptable to get a TC when requesting an AAC or ARQC, for that reason the verification types “AC Requested < XX” appear on the flow diagram.

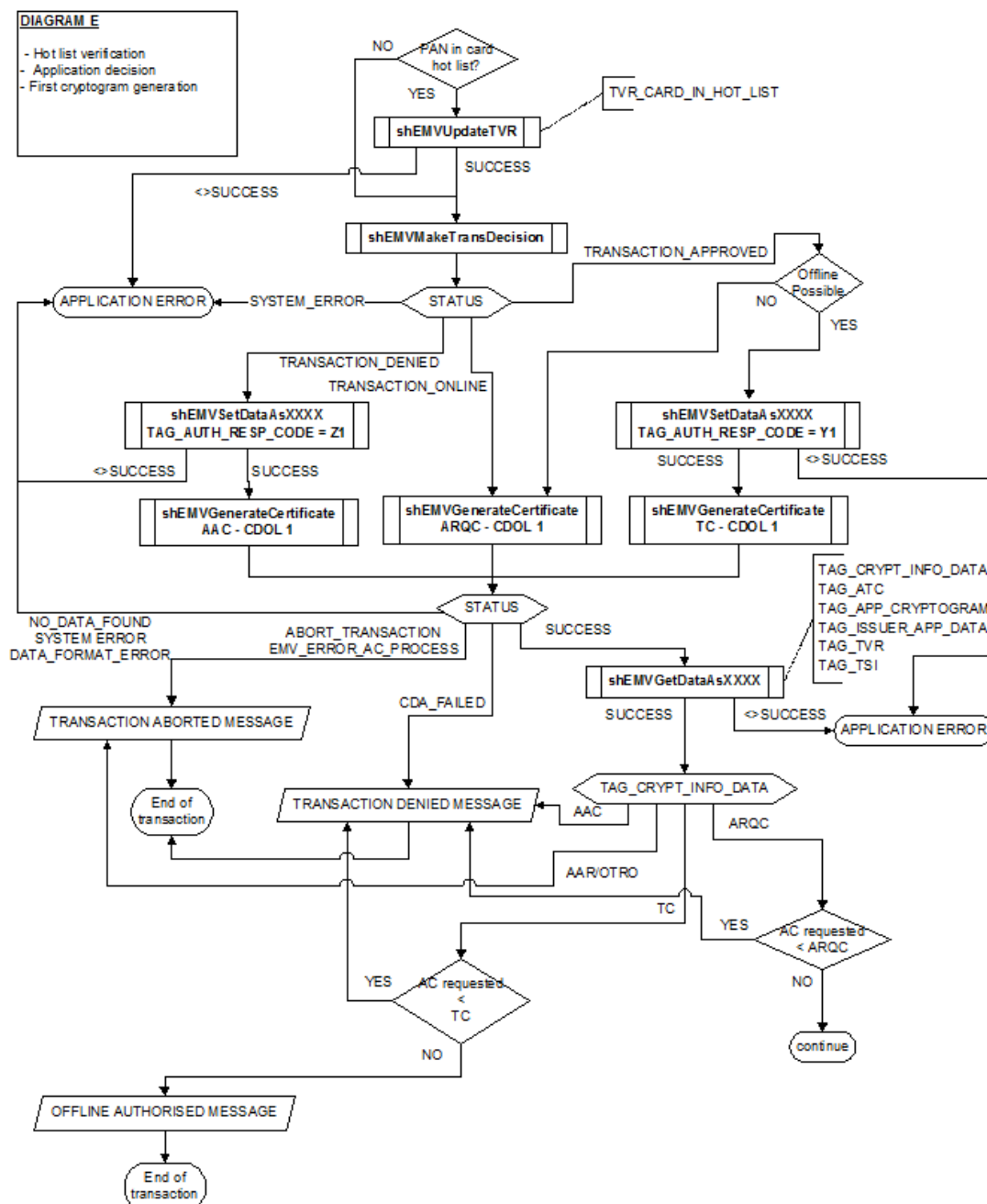


Figure 2.5: Diagram

### Transaction card decision

When the issuer decision is known, it must be informed to the card requesting the appropriate cryptogram type, so that it's the card the one who has the final decision regarding the transaction. The refund/reversal procedure is out of the scope of the kernel, anyway all the data items needed can be accessed through the shEMVGetDataAsXXXX functions.

Additionally the storage of the scripts results, second cryptogram for further report to the issuer is also out of the scope of this specification and will have to be determined by the particular payment system.



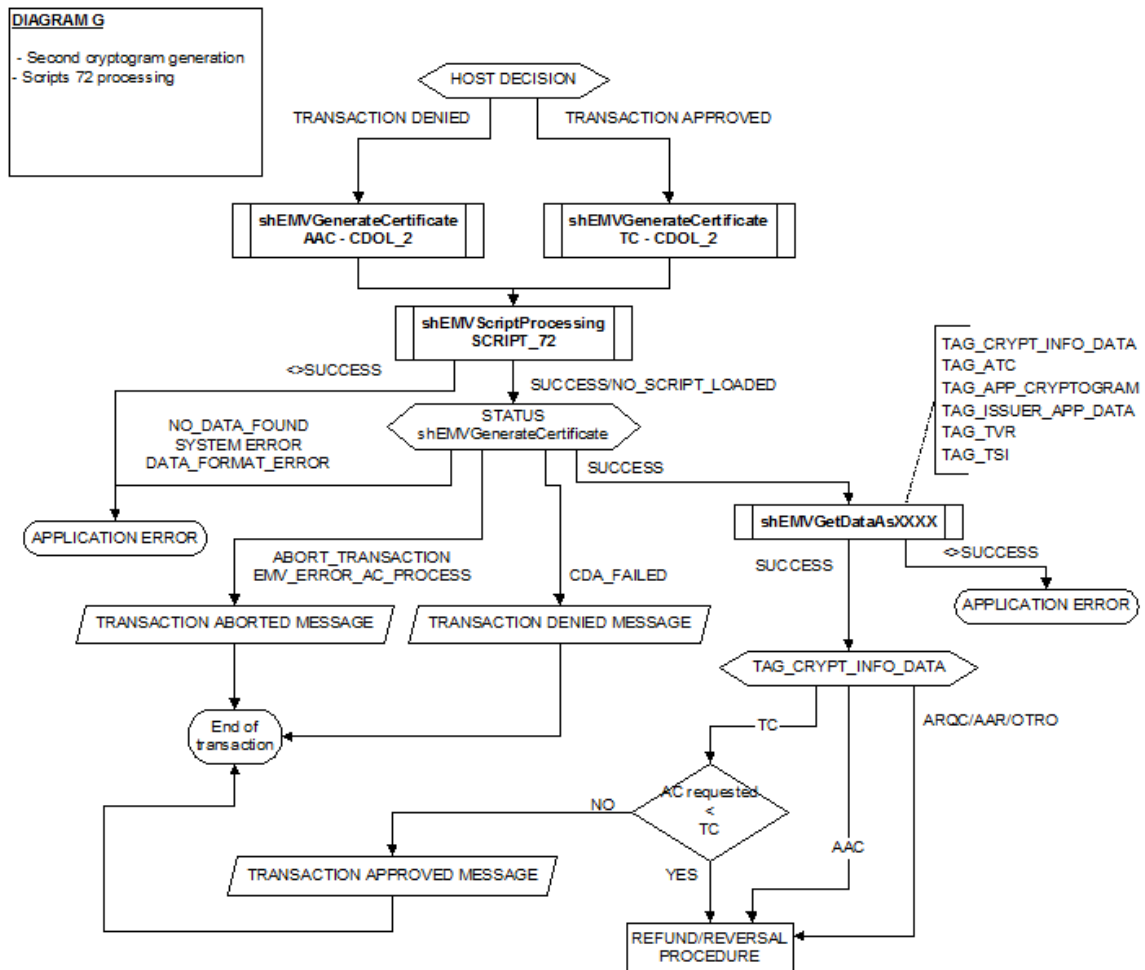


Figure 2.6: Diagram

### Default processing

If the transaction cannot be completed online due to problems with the communication channel the default processing must be applied. In this case, if the application has no offline capabilities the transaction must be declined immediately without any further processing.

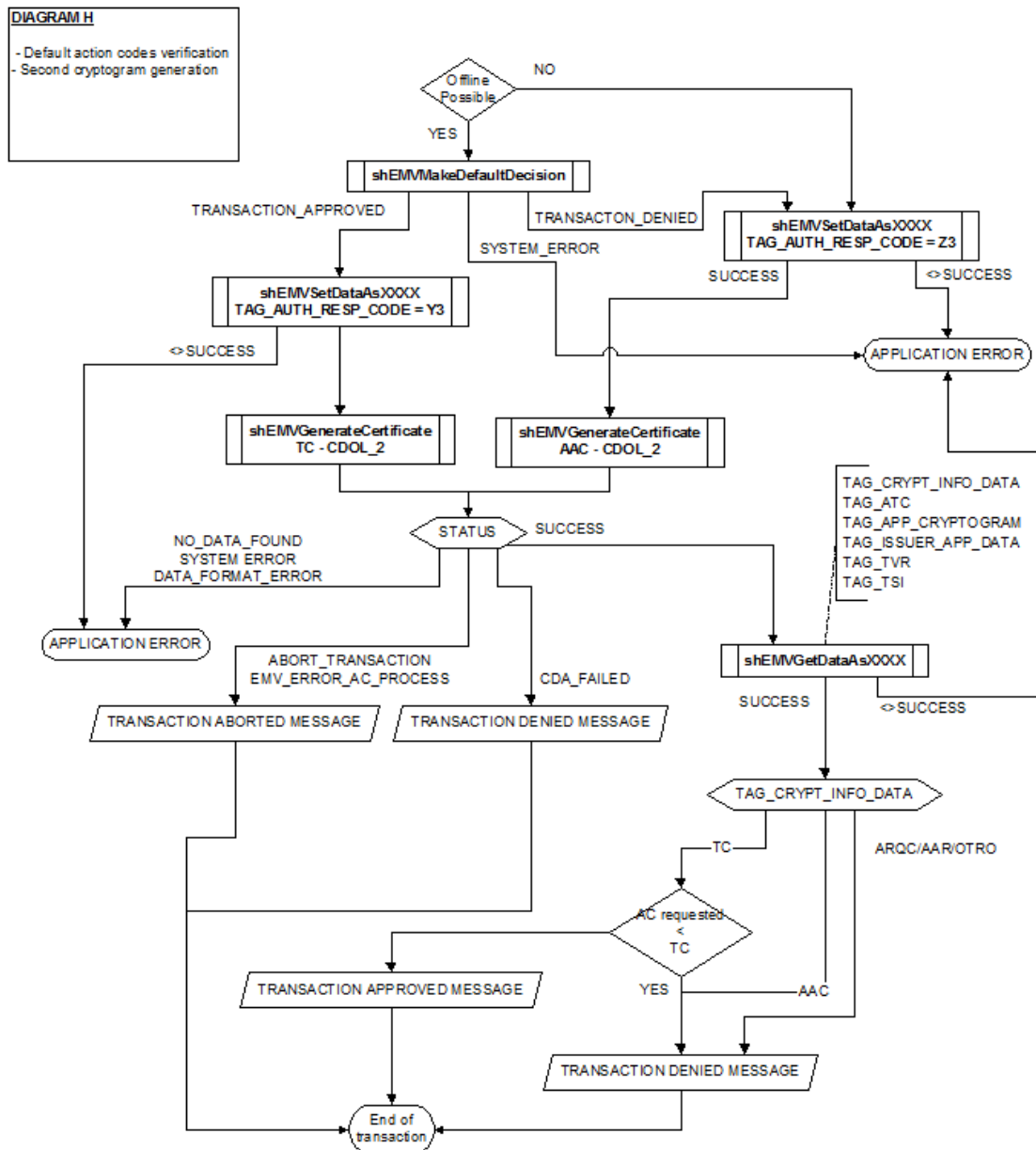


Figure 2.7: Default processing

## 2.15 EMV Operation Workflow

Description and block diagrams of various operations with the pinpad.

Description and block diagrams of various operations with the pinpad. **Kernel initialisation and version verification**

Firstly the application will have to initialise the library, this will only have to be done once at the unit power up. At the same time it will be convenient also to check the version info provided by the kernel to make sure that is the expected one.

After the initialisation, the first thing to do will be to set all the data items needed to start the transaction, mainly these items correspond to configuration issues:

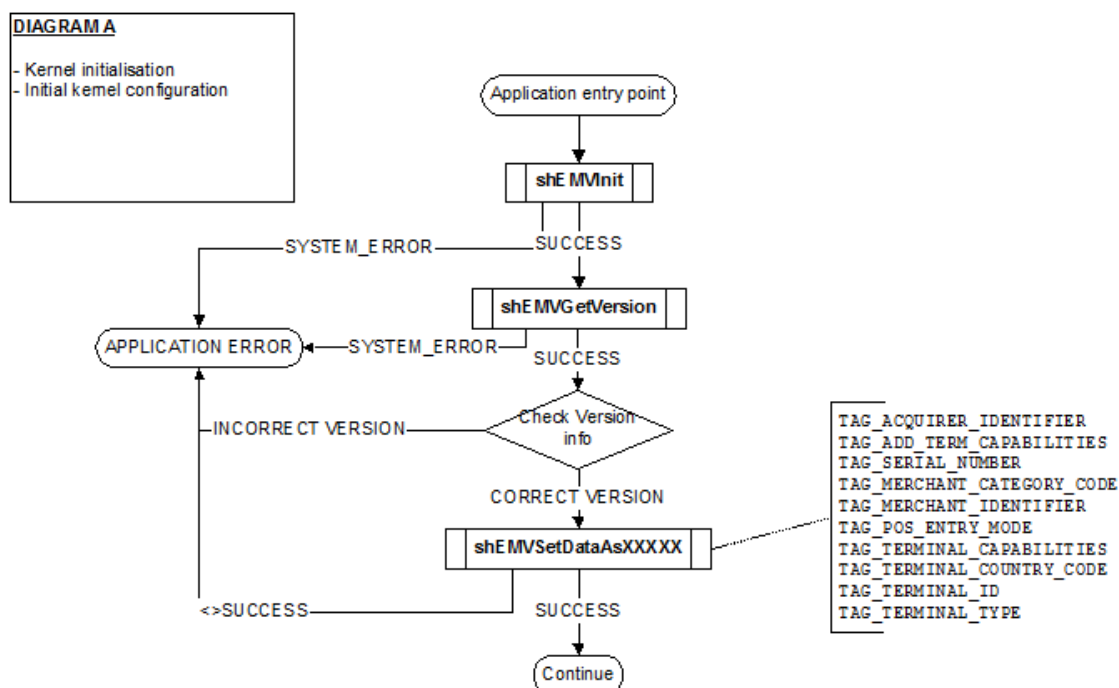


Figure 2.8: Kernel initialisation and version verification

### Card recognition and ATR validation

The application will be in charge of detecting the presence of the smart card in the reader using the corresponding firmware function call, the application must power on the card also, the kernel is used in this phase to validate the ATR got from the card.

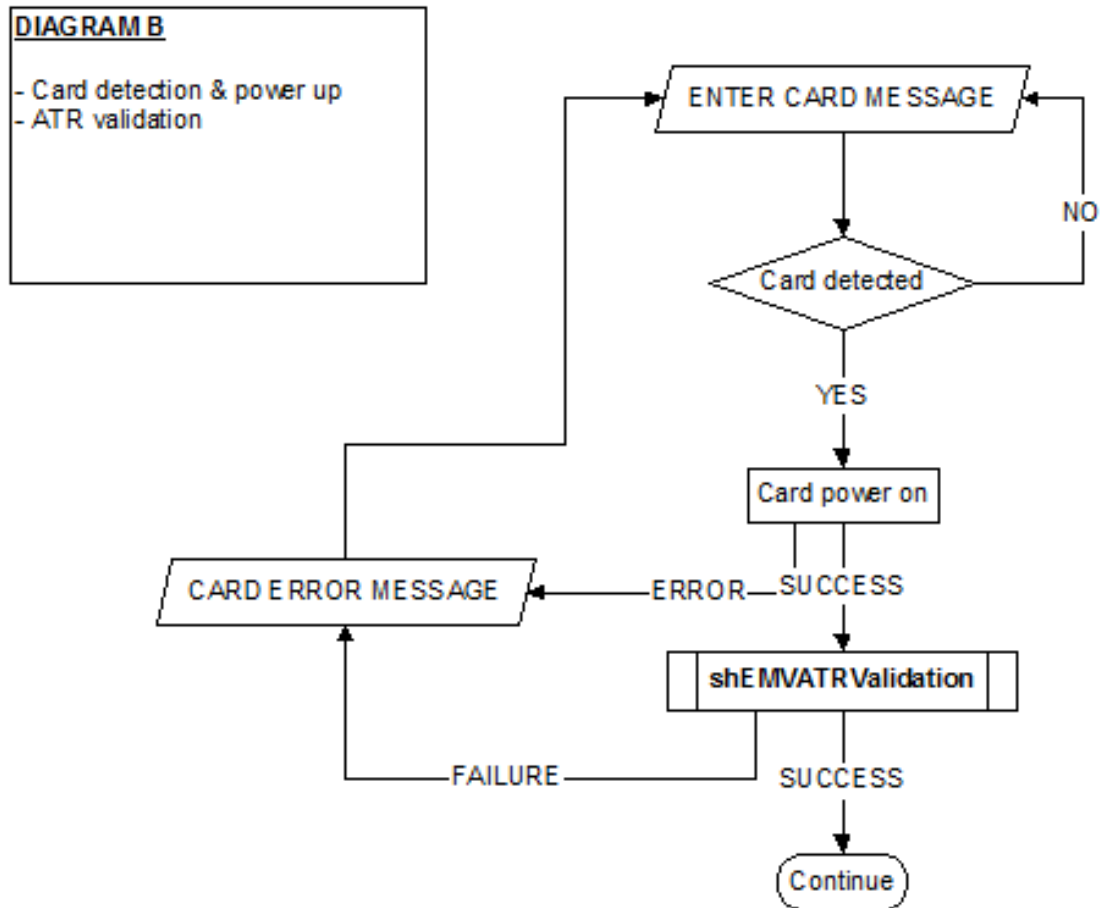


Figure 2.9: Card recognition and ATR validation

### Application selection & initiation

Once the card has been powered on and the ATR validated to ensure that is a valid EMV card, the next step is to proceed with the application selection and initiation.

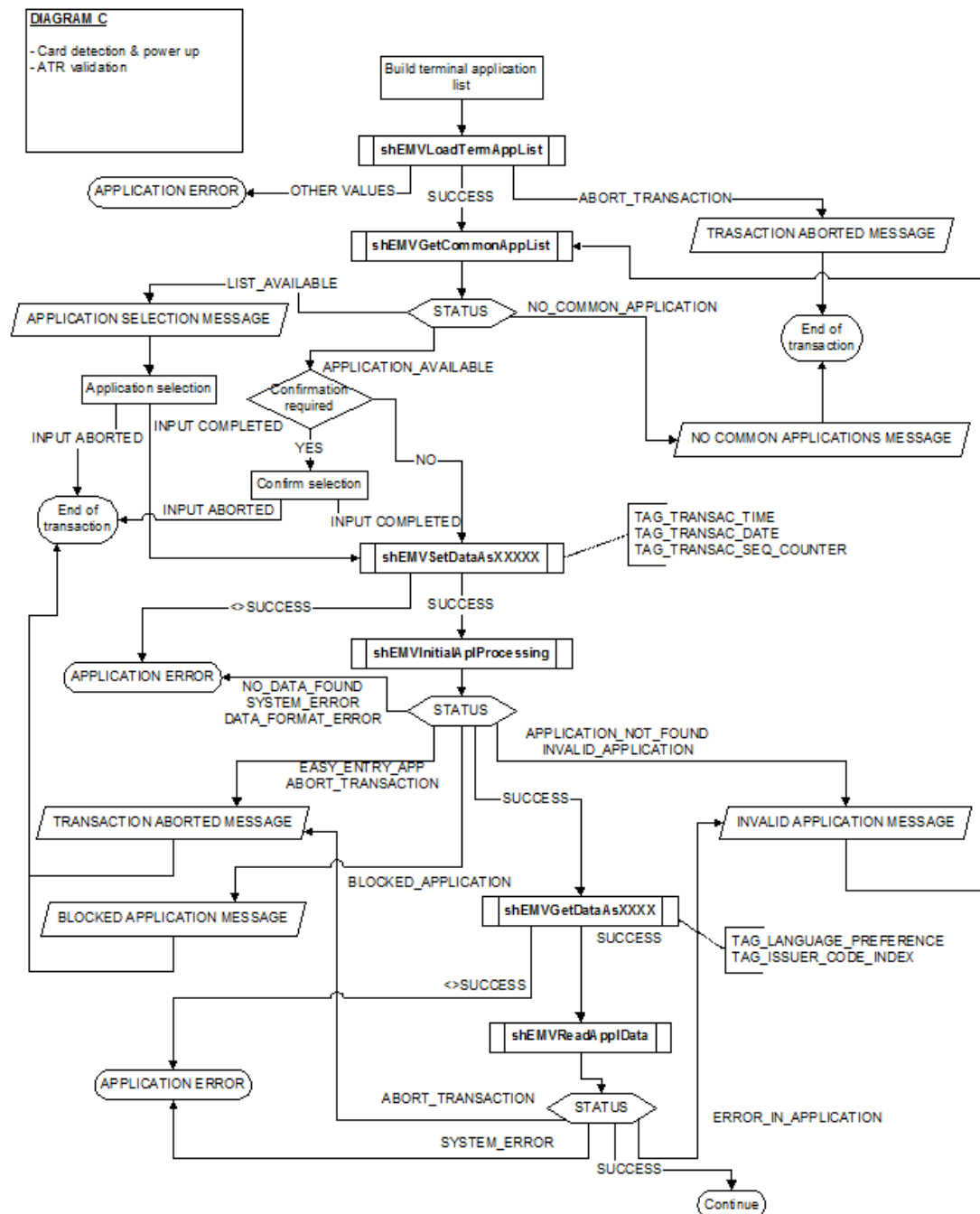


Figure 2.10: Application selection &amp; initiation

### Transaction data processing

Next the rest of the EMV transaction phases will be completed prior to the transaction decision, this includes:

Card data authentication.

Restrictions processing.

Risk control.

Cardholder verification.

For the card data authentication process the function `shEMVAuthentication` is called with the amount detection flag set to `FALSE` because it's assumed that the amount was already entered and is available for the application, if that's not the case if the application wants to use the actual value for the amount can enable this flag and provide the

amount if requested during the dynamic authentication.

If the application is not offline enabled the call to the function shEMVTerminalRisk can be made without setting the data previously as shown in the diagram.

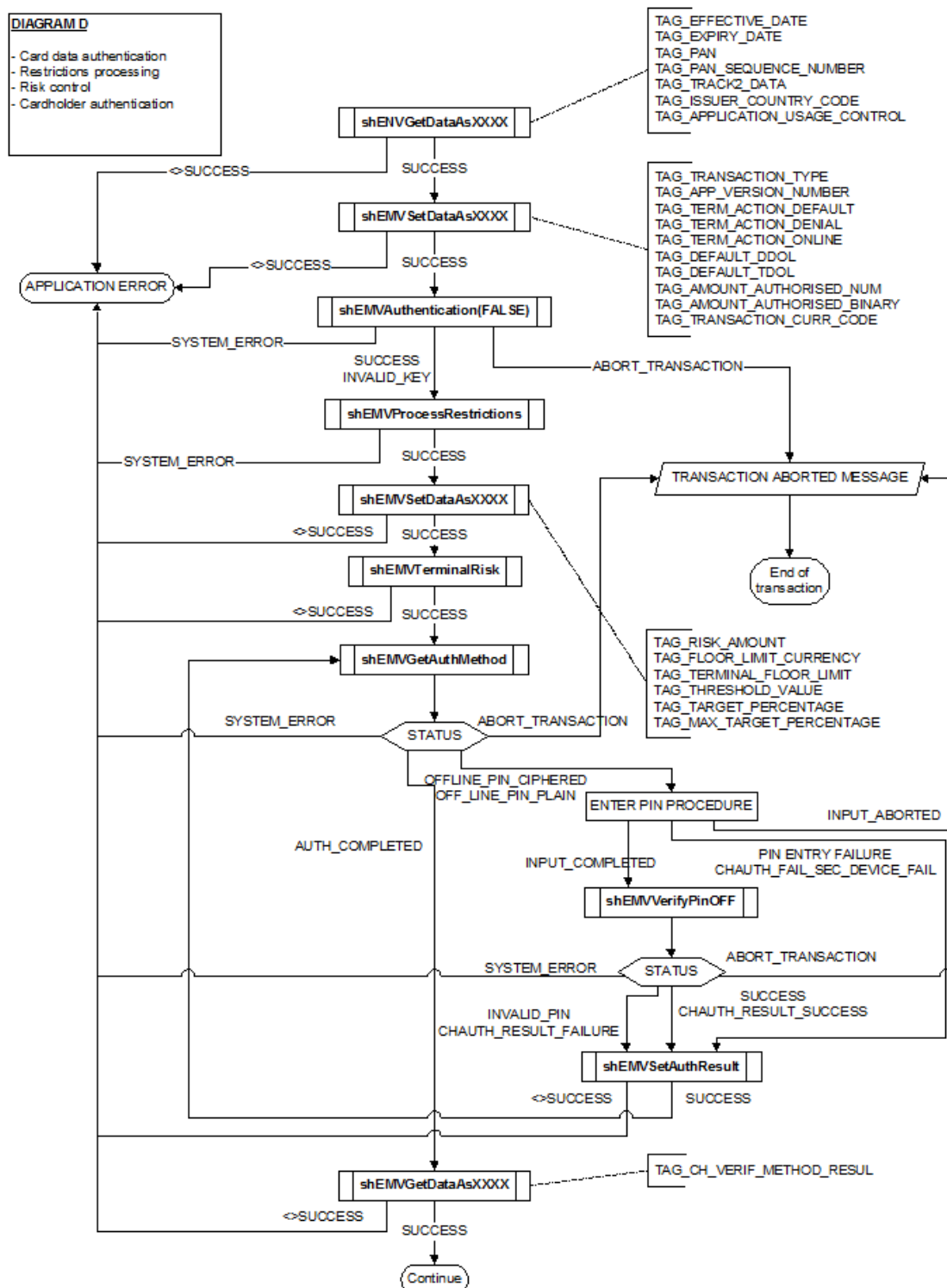


Figure 2.11: Data authentication process

### Application transaction decision

At this point of the transaction, it's where the first decision is made. All the previous procedures results have been

reflected on the TVR & TSI, and in this case the former is used to determine what type of transaction will be carried out from here.

Additionally for offline applications it will be necessary to check if the card is in the host list, if so the appropriate TVR bit must be updated.

The “offline possible” verification normally consists of a validation of the transactions log to ensure that the application can store the transaction data properly as well as any additional validation such as BIN control.

If the application has online only capabilities the result TRANSACTION\_APPROVED should never be received as the response to the shEMVMakeTransDecision call, anyhow if this happens the transaction should be considered denied.

Once the cryptogram has been generated, it's necessary to check its type according to the original requested type. So, it's not acceptable to get a TC when requesting an AAC or ARQC, for that reason the verification types “AC Requested < XX” appear on the flow diagram.

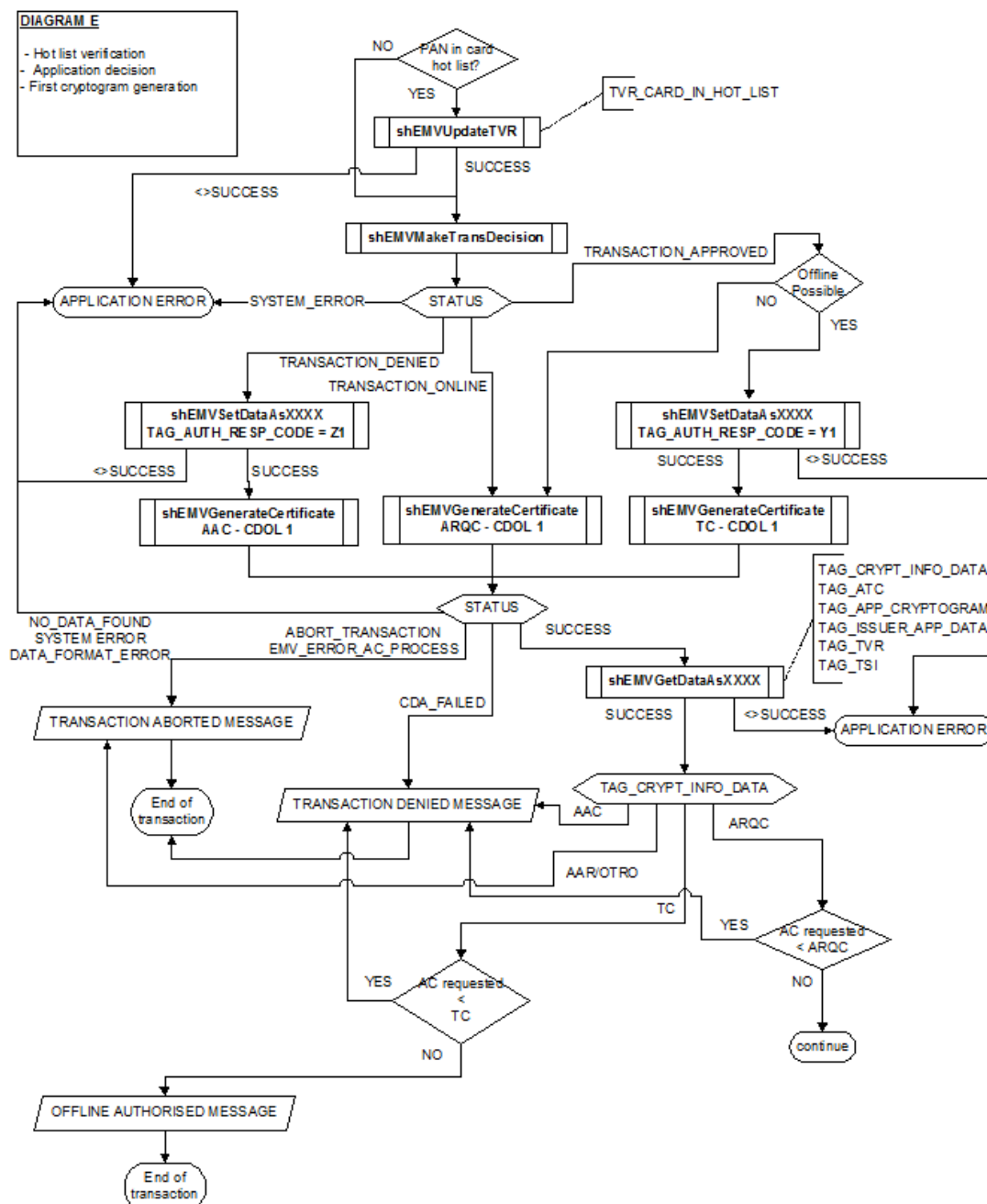


Figure 2.12: Diagram

### Transaction card decision

When the issuer decision is known, it must be informed to the card requesting the appropriate cryptogram type, so that it's the card the one who has the final decision regarding the transaction. The refund/reversal procedure is out of the scope of the kernel, anyway all the data items needed can be accessed through the shEMVGetDataAsXXXX functions.

Additionally the storage of the scripts results, second cryptogram for further report to the issuer is also out of the scope of this specification and will have to be determined by the particular payment system.



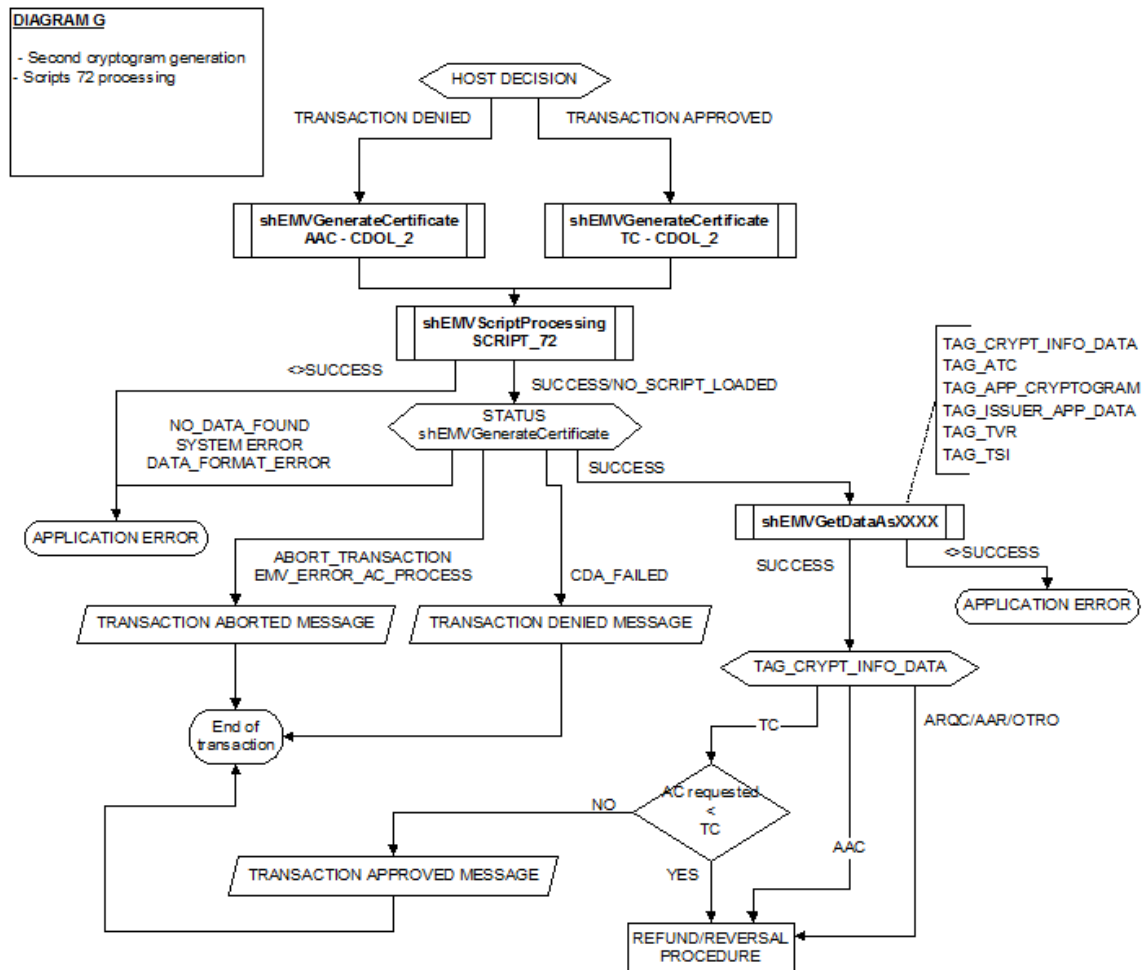


Figure 2.13: Diagram

## Default processing

If the transaction cannot be completed online due to problems with the communication channel the default processing must be applied. In this case, if the application has no offline capabilities the transaction must be declined immediately without any further processing.

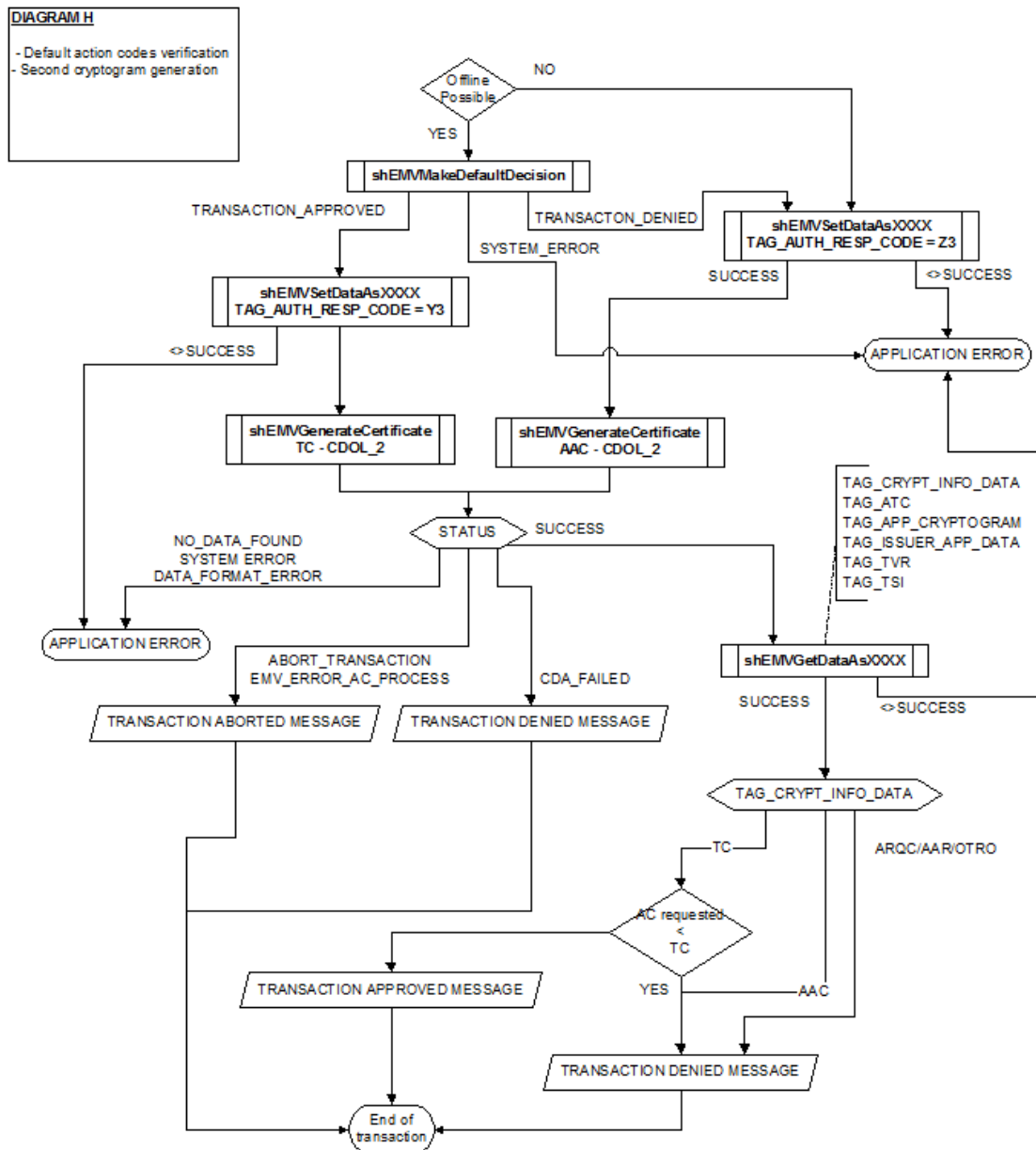


Figure 2.14: Default processing

## 2.16 EMV TAGs

EMV TAGs you can use with their properties.

### Macros

- #define **TAG\_PAN** 0x5A  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..10*  
*Format: N*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_CDOL\_1** 0x8C  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..252*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_CDOL\_2** 0x8D  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..252*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_CVM\_LIST** 0x8E  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..252*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_TDOL** 0x97  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..252*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_ISSUER\_PK\_CERTIFICATE** 0x90  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..248*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_SIGNED\_STA\_APP\_DAT** 0x93  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..248*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_ISSUER\_PK\_REMAINDER** 0x92  
*Source: ICC*  
*Length: ..248*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define **TAG\_CA\_PK\_INDEX** 0x8F

- Source: ICC*  
*Length: 1*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_CARDHOLDER\\_NAME](#) 0x5F20
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 2-26*  
*Format: A*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_SERVICE\\_CODE](#) 0x5F30
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 2*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_CARDHOLDER\\_NAME\\_EXTEN](#) 0x9F0B
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 27-45*  
*Format: A*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_EXPIRY\\_DATE](#) 0x5F24
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 3*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_EFFECTIVE\\_DATE](#) 0x5F25
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 3*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_ISSUER\\_COUNTRY\\_CODE](#) 0x5F28
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 2*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_ISSUER\\_COUNTRY\\_CODE\\_A2](#) 0x5F55
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 2*  
*Format: A*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_ISSUER\\_COUNTRY\\_CODE\\_A3](#) 0x5F56
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 3*  
*Format: A*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*
- #define [TAG\\_PAN\\_SEQUENCE\\_NUMBER](#) 0x5F34
  - Source: ICC*  
*Length: 1*  
*Format: B*  
*Read: YES*  
*Write: NO*

- #define TAG\_APP\_DISCRETION\_DAT 0x9F05
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-32
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APP\_USAGE\_CONTROL 0x9F07
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_APP\_VERSION\_NUMBER 0x9F08
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_ACTION\_DEFAULT 0x9F0D
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_ACTION\_DENIAL 0x9F0E
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_ACTION\_ONLINE 0x9F0F
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APPL\_REF\_CURRENCY 0x9F3B
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2-8
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APPL\_CURRENCY\_CODE 0x9F42
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APPL\_REF\_CURRENCY\_EXP 0x9F43
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-4
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APPL\_CURRENCY\_EXP 0x9F44
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO

- #define TAG\_ICC\_PK\_CERTIFICATE 0x9F46
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 248
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_PIN\_PK\_CERTIFICATE 0x9F2D
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 248
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_PK\_EXP 0x9F47
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-3
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_PIN\_PK\_EXP 0x9F2E
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-3
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_PK\_REMAINDER 0x9F48
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 248
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_PIN\_PK\_REMAINDER 0x9F2F
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 248
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_STA\_DAT\_AUTH\_TAG\_LIST 0x9F4A
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..252
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_DDOL 0x9F49
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..252
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_PK\_EXP 0x9F32
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-3
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_LOW\_CONSEC\_OFFLINE\_LIMIT 0x9F14
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO

- #define TAG\_UPP\_CONSEC\_OFFLINE\_LIMIT 0x9F23
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TRACK2\_DISCRETION\_DAT 0x9F20
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..22
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TRACK1\_DISCRETION\_DAT 0x9F1F
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..52
  - Format: A
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TRACK2\_EQUIVALENT\_DATA 0x57
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..19
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_UNPREDICTABLE\_NUMBER 0x9F37
  - Source: KER
  - Length: 4
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ACQUIRER\_IDENTIFIER 0x9F01
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 6
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_ADD\_TERM\_CAPABILITIES 0x9F40
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AMOUNT\_AUTHORISED\_BINARY 0x81
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 4
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AMOUNT\_AUTHORISED\_NUM 0x9F02
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 6
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AMOUNT\_OTHER\_BINARY 0x9F04
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 4
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES

- #define TAG\_AMOUNT\_OTHER\_NUM 0x9F03
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 6
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AMOUNT\_REF\_CURR 0x9F3A
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 4
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_APP\_CRYPTOGAM 0x9F26
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 8
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_AFL 0x94
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ...252
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_AID 0x4F
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 5-16
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TERM\_AID 0x9F06
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 5-16
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AIP 0x82
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APP\_LABEL 0x50
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-16
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APP\_PREFERRED\_NAME 0x9F12
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1-16
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APP\_PRIORITY\_INDICATOR 0x87
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO



- #define TAG\_ATC 0x9F36  
Source: ICC  
Length: 2  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: NO
- #define TAG\_APP\_VERSION\_NUMBER 0x9F09  
Source: APP  
Length: 2  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AUTH\_CODE 0x89  
Source: APP  
Length: 6  
Format: AN  
Read: YES  
Write: YES
- #define TAG\_AUTH\_RESP\_CODE 0x8A  
Source: APP  
Length: 2  
Format: AN  
Read: YES  
Write: YES
- #define TAG\_CH\_VERIF\_METHOD\_RESULT 0x9F34  
Source: KER  
Length: 3  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: NO
- #define TAG\_CA\_PUBLIC\_KEY\_INDEX 0x9F22  
Source: APP  
Length: 1  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: YES
- #define TAG\_CRYPT\_INFO\_DATA 0x9F27  
Source: ICC  
Length: 1  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: NO
- #define TAG\_DAT\_AUTH\_CODE 0x9F45  
Source: ICC  
Length: 2  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ICC\_DYN\_NUMBER 0x9F4C  
Source: ICC  
Length: 2-8  
Format: B  
Read: YES  
Write: NO
- #define TAG\_SERIAL\_NUMBER 0x9F1E  
Source: APP  
Length: 8  
Format: AN  
Read: YES  
Write: YES

- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_APP\_DAT 0x9F10
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..32
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_AUTH\_DAT 0x91
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 8-16
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_CODE\_INDEX 0x9F11
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_LANGUAGE\_PREFERENCE 0x5F2D
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2-8
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_LATC 0x9F13
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_MERCHANT\_CATEGORY\_CODE 0x9F15
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 2
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_MERCHANT\_IDENTIFIER 0x9F16
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 15
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_PIN\_TRY\_COUNTER 0x9F17
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_POS\_ENTRY\_MODE 0x9F39
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_PDOL 0x9F38
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..252
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO

- #define TAG\_TERMINAL\_CAPABILITIES 0x9F33
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 3
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERMINAL\_COUNTRY\_CODE 0x9F1A
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 2
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERMINAL\_FLOOR\_LIMIT 0x9F1B
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 4
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERMINAL\_ID 0x9F1C
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 8
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERMINAL\_RISK\_DAT 0x9F1D
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1-8
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERMINAL\_TYPE 0x9F35
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TVR 0x95
  - Source: KER
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_CURR\_CODE 0x5F2A
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 2
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_CURR\_EXP 0x5F36
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_DATE 0x9A
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 3
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES

- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_REF\_CURR\_CODE 0x9F3C
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 2
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_REF\_CURR\_EXP 0x9F3D
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_SEQ\_COUNTER 0x9F41
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 2-4
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TSI 0x9B
  - Source: KER
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_TIME 0x9F21
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 3
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_TYPE 0x9C
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_SIGNED\_DYN\_APP\_DAT 0x9F4B
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..248
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TC\_HASH\_VALUE 0x98
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 20
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_ACCOUNT\_TYPE 0x5F37
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_BANK\_IDENTIFIER\_CODE 0x5F54
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 8-11
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO

- #define TAG\_IBAN 0x5F53
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..34
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_IDENTIFICATION\_NUMBER 0x42
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 3
  - Format: N
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_URL 0x5F50
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: ..255
  - Format: AN
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_LOG\_ENTRY 0x9F4D
  - Source: ICC
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_TRANSACTION\_CATEGORY\_CODE 0x9F53
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_RISK\_AMOUNT 0xDF02
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 4
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERM\_ACTION\_DEFAULT 0xDF03
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERM\_ACTION\_DENIAL 0xDF04
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_TERM\_ACTION\_ONLINE 0xDF05
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_THRESHOLD\_VALUE 0xDF07
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 5
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES

- #define TAG\_TARGET\_PERCENTAGE 0xDF08
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_MAX\_TARGET\_PERCENTAGE 0xDF09
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 1
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_DEFAULT\_DDOL 0xDF15
  - Source: APP
  - Length: ...252
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_DEFAULT\_TDOL 0xDF18
  - Source: APP
  - Length: ...252
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_FLOOR\_LIMIT\_CURRENCY 0xDF19
  - Source: APP
  - Length: 2
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_OFF\_AUTH\_DAT 0xDF23
  - Source: APP
  - Length: ...2048
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_SCRIPTS 0xDF24
  - Source: APP
  - Length: ...256
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: YES
- #define TAG\_ISSUER\_SCRIPTS\_RESULT 0xDF25
  - Source: APP
  - Length: ...256
  - Format: B
  - Read: YES
  - Write: NO

### 2.16.1 Detailed Description

EMV TAGs you can use with their properties.

## 2.17 EMV Status Codes

These status codes are returned from every EMV function to indicate the result of it.

### Macros

- #define **EMV\_SUCCESS** 0  
*Operation successful.*
- #define **EMV\_LIST\_AVAILABLE** 1  
*More than one matching applications found.*
- #define **EMV\_APPLICATION\_AVAILABLE** 2  
*Only one matching application found.*
- #define **EMV\_NO\_COMMON\_APPLICATION** 3  
*No matching applications found.*
- #define **EMV\_EASY\_ENTRY\_APP** 4  
*Easy Entry application.*
- #define **EMV\_AMOUNT\_NEEDED** 5  
*Amount is requested by the dynamic data authentication.*
- #define **EMV\_RESULT\_NEEDED** 6  
*Result needed.*
- #define **EMV\_AUTH\_COMPLETED** 7  
*Authentication is completed.*
- #define **EMV\_AUTH\_NOT\_DONE** 8  
*Authentication was not performed.*
- #define **EMV\_OFFLINE\_PIN\_PLAIN** 9  
*OFFLINE plain text pin is required.*
- #define **EMV\_ONLINE\_PIN** 10  
*ONLINE pin is required.*
- #define **EMV\_OFFLINE\_PIN\_CIPHERED** 11  
*OFFLINE ciphered pin is required.*
- #define **EMV\_BLOCKED\_APPLICATION** 12  
*Explicit selection was done and blocked AIDs were found.*
- #define **EMV\_TRANSACTION\_ONLINE** 13  
*An online request should be done.*
- #define **EMV\_TRANSACTION\_APPROVED** 14  
*Transaction can be accepted offline.*
- #define **EMV\_TRANSACTION\_DENIED** 15  
*Transaction must be declined.*
- #define **EMV\_CDA\_FAILED** 16  
*CDA failed and the cryptogram got is not an AAC or the data handed for DDA was not found.*
- #define **EMV\_INVALID\_PIN** 17  
*Incorrect PIN.*
- #define **EMV\_INVALID\_PIN\_LAST\_ATTEMPT** 18  
*Incorrect PIN, last attempt available only.*
- #define **EMV\_FAILURE** 50  
*Command failed, possibly due wrong input parameters - wrong ATR, bit values, etc.*
- #define **EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND** 51  
*Incoming data pointer is null or empty.*
- #define **EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR** 52  
*Internal system error occurred.*

- `#define EMV_DATA_FORMAT_ERROR` 53  
*Incorrect format found in the input parameters.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_ATR` 54  
*Invalid ATR sequence, not according to specs.*
- `#define EMV_ABORT_TRANSACTION` 55  
*Severe error occurred transaction must be aborted.*
- `#define EMV_APPLICATION_NOT_FOUND` 56  
*AID not found in the card.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_APPLICATION` 57  
*Application is not correct.*
- `#define EMV_ERROR_IN_APPLICATION` 58  
*Some error during read process.*
- `#define EMV_CARD_BLOCKED` 59  
*Status word got from the PSE selection indicates that the card is blocked.*
- `#define EMV_NO_SCRIPT_LOADED` 61  
*No script loaded.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_TAG` 62  
*Tag cannot be read.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_LENGTH` 63  
*Length of the buffer is incorrect.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_HASH` 64  
*Error in the HASH verification.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_KEY` 65  
*No key was found to do the verification.*
- `#define EMV_NO_MORE_KEYS` 66  
*No more available locations for keys.*
- `#define EMV_ERROR_AC_PROCESS` 67  
*Error processing the AC generation.*
- `#define EMV_ERROR_AC_DENIED` 68  
*Status word got from the card is 6985.*
- `#define EMV_NO_CURRENT_METHOD` 69  
*No method is currently applicable.*
- `#define EMV_RESULT_ALREADY_LOADED` 70  
*Result already loaded for the current method.*
- `#define EMV_LAST_EMVKERNEL_ERR_CODE` 70
- `#define EMV_INVALID_REMAINDER` 80
- `#define EMV_INVALID_HEADER` 81  
*Invalid header.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_FOOTER` 82  
*Invalid footer.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_FORMAT` 83  
*Invalid format.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_CERTIFICATE` 84  
*Invalid certificate.*
- `#define EMV_INVALID_SIGNATURE` 85  
*Invalid signature.*

### 2.17.1 Detailed Description

These status codes are returned from every EMV function to indicate the result of it.



## 2.18 Transaction Start

This section includes the command used to start the transaction: ATR validation and application selection.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvATRValidation:warmReset:error:](#)  
*The command is in charge of validating the ATR sequence got from the card to ensure that is fully EMV compliant and that obeys the rules stated in the specification.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvLoadAppList:selectionMethod:includeBlockedAIDs:error:](#)  
*The command initiates the application selection process, loading the application list supported by the terminal.*
- (NSArray \*) - [DTDevices::emvGetCommonAppList:error:](#)  
*The command gets back the list of common applications supported by the terminal and the card, actually this commands will end or resume the selection procedure.*

### 2.18.1 Detailed Description

This section includes the command used to start the transaction: ATR validation and application selection.

### 2.18.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.18.2.1 - (BOOL) emvATRValidation: (NSData \*) ATR warmReset:(BOOL) warmReset error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command is in charge of validating the ATR sequence got from the card to ensure that is fully EMV compliant and that obeys the rules stated in the specification.

#### Note

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>warmReset</i>	- holds the type of power up applied if cold or warm power up.
<i>ATR</i>	- ATR sequence received form the card: TS+T0+TB1+TC1+TS+T0+TB1+TC1+TD1+TD2+T-A3+TB3+TCK
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.18.2.2 - (NSArray \*) emvGetCommonAppList: (BOOL \*) confirmationRequired error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command gets back the list of common applications supported by the terminal and the card, actually this commands will end or resume the selection procedure.

Initially the command will check the provided data, if it's empty string, the status NO\_DATA\_FOUND will be returned, if during the procedure any internal error occurs the status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. On the other hand, if the process and be completed correctly the possible status returned will be: EMV\_LIST\_AVAILABLE, EMV\_APPLICATION\_AVAILABLE, EMV\_NO\_COMMON\_APPLICATION according to the number of common applications found.

**Note**

The application may know beforehand the number of common applications by retrieving the value of the data item TAG\_COMMON\_APP\_NUMBER.

In the event of an application error that doesn't force to abort the transaction, this command will be called again as many times as necessary while the list won't be empty. Internally the Kernel will remove the wrong application so that the selection could be resumed.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>confirmation-Required</i>	- defines if USER Confirmation is required
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

Array of [DTEMVApplication](#) upon success, nil otherwise

**2.18.2.3** - (BOOL) emvLoadAppList: (NSArray \*) *appList* selectionMethod:(APP\_SELECTION\_METHODS) *selectionMethod* includeBlockedAIDs:(BOOL) *includeBlockedAIDs* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

The command initiates the application selection process, loading the application list supported by the terminal.

The maximum number of application that can be loaded into the kernel is up to 75. This number is only constrained by the max packet size that can be exchanged on the port (2Kb).

Initially the command will inspect the incoming data to make sure that if data are provided and that all the data related to terminal applications is valid. If no data has been provided (the list is empty) the status EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND will be returned, in the event of a format failure of the applications data the result got will be EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR. If during the internal procedure of the commands a system error occurs the command will return with the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR, on the other hand if the error occurs dealing with the card or with the data got and the transaction must be aborted according to EMV specs, the result will be EMV\_ABORT\_TRANSACTION. If the process can be completed correctly and the list is properly parsed and managed the status SUCCESS will be returned.

**Note**

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>appList</i>	- an array of application <a href="#">DTEMVApplication</a>	
<i>selectionMethod</i>	- defines the selection preferred method:	
	SELECTION_PSE	Selection by PSE
	SELECTION_AIDLIST	Selection by AID list
<i>includeBlockedAIDs</i>	- indicates if blocked AIDs should be included	
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.19 Transaction Processing

This section covers the different phases of the transaction:

Initial process

Data reading

Card data authentication

Restrictions processing

Risk Control

Cardholder authentication

Certificate generation

Make Transaction decision

Make default decision.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvInitialAppProcessing:error:](#)  
*Once an application has been selected, the next phase is to start the transaction with it by issuing the GET PROCESSING command and analyzing the information got.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvReadAppData:error:](#)  
*The command reads and validates the data informed in the AFL and that will be used along the transaction.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvAuthentication:error:](#)  
*Through this command the card data is authenticated depending on the capabilities of the card and the kernel.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvProcessRestrictions:](#)  
*The command performs the restrictions processing related to application version, application usage control and effective and expiry dates.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvTerminalRisk:error:](#)  
*The application risk control is done by this command, including Floorlimit checking, Random selection (only if offline is enabled) and Velocity checking.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvGetAuthenticationMethod:](#)  
*The command starts or resumes the cardholder authentication procedure, the current verification method is communicated to the application.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvSetAuthenticationResult:error:](#)  
*Using this command the kernel gets the result of the previously informed verification method.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvVerifyPinOffline:](#)  
*The command allows the application to apply the offline PIN verification (plaintext or encrypted) method.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvGenerateCertificate:risk:error:](#)  
*Using this command the application will be able to generate an application cryptogram, the first or the second one, as required by the transaction.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvMakeTransactionDecision:](#)  
*The command checks the action codes (provided by the application and read from the card), the TVR and will determine how the transaction is resolved.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvMakeDefaultDecision:](#)  
*The command checks the default action code (provided by the application and read from the card), the TVR and will determine how the transaction is resolved by default.*

### 2.19.1 Detailed Description

This section covers the different phases of the transaction:

Initial process

Data reading  
 Card data authentication  
 Restrictions processing  
 Risk Control  
 Cardholder authentication  
 Certificate generation  
 Make Transaction decision  
 Make default decision.

## 2.19.2 Function Documentation

### 2.19.2.1 - (BOOL) emvAuthentication: (BOOL) checkAmount error:(NSError \*\*) error

Through this command the card data is authenticated depending on the capabilities of the card and the kernel.

The method could be static or dynamic, in this case is completed here, or combined that will be carried out later at the application cryptogram generation stage.

If the authentication can be performed (successfully or not) the command will return EMV\_SUCCESS. If an internal error occurs the status got will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. EMV\_ABORT\_TRANSACTION will be returned if the transaction must be immediately terminated due to a severe error in the processing. If the check amount flag was enabled and the amount is one of the data items requested by the dynamic data authentication the status EMV\_AMOUNT\_NEEDED will be returned. If the authentication cannot be completed due to a missing CA public key, the status returned will be EMV\_INVALID\_KEY.

#### Note

EMV\_INVALID\_KEY status code will let the application to detect and invalid configuration concerning the CA RSA public keys.

If the selected authentication method is the CDA, the verification of the CA public key presence and the recovery of the issuer public key is done here prior to the actual CDA verification to be done at the AC generation.

The reason for setting the checkAmount parameter to TRUE is to allow the application to know if the amount is required as part of the dynamic data used for the authentication. This can be useful if the application plans to be sure that the actual amount will be used in the process rather than a default value set to zero.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>checkAmount</i>	- determine whether the amount is checked for the dynamic authentication
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

### 2.19.2.2 - (BOOL) emvGenerateCertificate: (CERTIFICATE\_AC\_TYPES) type risk:(CARD\_RISK\_TYPES) risk error:(NSError \*\*) error

Using this command the application will be able to generate an application cryptogram, the first or the second one, as required by the transaction.

If the incoming pointer to the structure with the parameters is NULL, the result set will be EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND. If any of the incoming parameters value is incorrect the status EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR will be returned. EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be get by the application if any internal error occurs during the processing. If during the

cryptogram generation an error occurs that requires the transaction termination, the status EMV\_ABORT\_TRANSACTION will be informed. If other kind of error occurs during the generation the status EMV\_ERROR\_AC\_PROCESS will be got. If the combined authentication is enabled, EMV\_CDA\_FAILED will be returned to indicate that it failed. Finally if the certificate can be obtained with no error the status will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

#### Note

If the CDA is the card data authentication mode the CDA will be always requested on the first cryptogram generation if the cryptogram type to be requested is a TC. It will be always disabled for AAC and for an ARQC depends on the CDA mode active.

If the CDA is the card data authentication mode the CDA will be disabled on the second cryptogram generation if the cryptogram type to be requested is an AAC, otherwise if the cryptogram type is a TC it will depend on the CDA mode active.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>type</i>	- specifies AC type AAC:	
	CERTIFICATE_AAC	AAC
	CERTIFICATE_TC	TC
	CERTIFICATE_ARQC	ARQC
<i>risk</i>	- card risk:	
	CDOL_1	CDOL_1
	CDOL_2	CDOL_2
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.19.2.3 - (BOOL) emvGetAuthenticationMethod: (NSError \*\*) error

The command starts or resumes the cardholder authentication procedure, the current verification method is communicated to the application.

The lists of methods and conditions is parsed and processed to identify what are the valid ones according to the kernel capabilities the possible methods available are: EMV\_OFF\_LINE\_PIN\_PLAIN, EMV\_ONLINE\_PIN, EMV\_OFFLINE\_PIN\_CIPHERED.

If during the process an internal error occurs the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR is returned, if the transaction has to be terminated the status EMV\_ABORT\_TRANSACTION will be returned. If there are not more valid methods to be applied the status EMV\_AUTH\_COMPLETED is set.

#### Note

If a combination of methods is required by the card, pin verification plus signature, the kernel directly checks if the latter is possible according to the capabilities, if so the former is informed otherwise the next entry in the list will be processed.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.4 - (BOOL) emvInitialAppProcessing: (NSData \*) aid error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Once an application has been selected, the next phase is to start the transaction with it by issuing the GET PROCESSING command and analyzing the information got.

First the input data are checked, if empty the status EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND is returned, if the length of the AID is incorrect (greater than AID max length or less than TAG min length) the status got will be EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR. If any internal error occurs during the processing the status returned will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. Depending on the application type or status the codes EMV\_EASY\_ENTRY\_APP, EMV\_INVALID\_APPLICATION or EMV\_BLOCKED\_APPLICATION could be returned. If the transaction must be aborted due to a processing error with the card or with the data got from it the status returned will be EMV\_ABORT\_TRANSACTION. EMV\_APPLICATION\_NOT\_FOUND will be the status got if the AID provided cannot be found in the card. If everything is correct and the application can be initiated properly the status will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

**Note**

At this point of the transaction it could be possible to resume the application selection by calling the ppEmvGetCommonAppList command again, this will depend on the status got, normally for EMV\_EASY\_ENTRY\_APP, EMV\_INVALID\_APPLICATION or EMV\_BLOCKED\_APPLICATION the selection should be resumed. Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>aid</i>	- indicates the selected application AID
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.5 - (BOOL) emvMakeDefaultDecision: (NSError \*\*) error**

The command checks the default action code (provided by the application and read from the card), the TVR and will determine how the transaction is resolved by default.

EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be returned if any internal error occurs during the processing. If any of the bits in the TVR match with the default action codes the status EMV\_TRANSACTION\_DENIED will be returned, otherwise the status will be EMV\_TRANSACTION\_APPROVED instead.

**Note**

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.6 - (BOOL) emvMakeTransactionDecision: (NSError \*\*) error**

The command checks the action codes (provided by the application and read from the card), the TVR and will determine how the transaction is resolved.

EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be got by the application if any internal error occurs during the processing. First the denial action codes are checked, if any of the bits in the TVR match the status EMV\_TRANSACTION\_DENIED will be returned, otherwise if the terminal is both offline & online, the online action codes will be checked in the same way and if any of the bits match with the TVR data the status EMV\_TRANSACTION\_ONLINE will be set, if there's no match at all the status will be EMV\_TRANSACTION\_APPROVED instead. If the terminal is offline only the default action code is checked, if any of the bits in the TVR match the status EMV\_TRANSACTION\_DENIED will be returned, otherwise the status got will be EMV\_TRANSACTION\_APPROVED. If the terminal is online only the status EMV\_TRANSACTION\_ONLINE will be returned.

**Note**

According to the latest EMV recommendations concerning the CDA processing (Specification update bulletin No. 44) if the CDA is the card data authentication mechanism to be performed, the previous key recovery process will be accomplished prior to the transaction decision so that CDA errors could be detected in advance and reflected on the TVR.

The online/offline capability of the terminal is determined by the value of the tag TAG\_TERMINAL\_TYPE. Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.7 - (BOOL) emvProcessRestrictions: (NSError \*\*) error**

The command performs the restrictions processing related to application version, application usage control and effective and expiry dates.

If the process can be completed correctly the returned status will be SUCCESS, if any internal error occurs the status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR instead.

**Note**

To complete this process the kernel needs from the application the following data items to have been provided prior to this command: • TAG\_APP\_VERSION\_NUMBER • TAG\_TERMINAL\_TYPE • TAG\_ADD\_TERM\_CAPABILITIES • TAG\_TERMINAL\_COUNTRY\_CODE • TAG\_TRANSAC\_DATE • TAG\_TRANSAC\_TYPE

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.8 - (BOOL) emvReadAppData: (NSArray \*) tags error:(NSError \*\*) error**

The command reads and validates the data informed in the AFL and that will be used along the transaction.

If during the AFL data reading and validating an error occurs that commits the transaction to be terminated, the status `EMV_ABORT_TRANSACTION` will be returned. If the error allows the application selection to be resumed, the status returned will be `EMV_ERROR_IN_APPLICATION`. If `psrEMVManTagList` is not `NULL`, the presence of the tags provided here will be checked. If during the procedure any internal error occurs, `EMV_SYSTEM_ERROR` will be returned. On the other hand, if everything is correct and the data can be extracted and validated, the status `EMV_SUCCESS` will be the value returned.

#### Note

At this point of the transaction it could be possible to resume the application selection by calling the `ppEmvGetCommonAppList` command again, this will depend on the status got, normally for `EMV_ERROR_IN_APPLICATION` the selection should be resumed.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in `emvLastStatus` property.

#### Parameters

<i>tags</i>	- an array of tags to return
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.19.2.9 - (BOOL) emvSetAuthenticationResult: (AUTH\_RESULTS) result error:(NSError \*\*) error

Using this command the kernel gets the result of the previously informed verification method.

Firstly the value of the result informed must be checked, if its value is not a valid one the status `EMV_DATA_FORMAT_ERROR` will be returned. If the authentication process was not started and no method is currently active the status `EMV_NO_CURRENT_METHOD` will be got by the application, if the result for the current method was already provided the status will be `EMV_RESULT_ALREADY_LOADED`. `EMV_SYSTEM_ERROR` will be get by the application if any internal error occurs during the processing. When everything is ok and the result can be stored correctly the status sent back is `EMV_SUCCESS`.

#### Note

The actual verification method result according to EMV specs can be recovered by the application at later stage by accessing the data item `TAG_CH_VERIF_METHOD_RESUL`.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in `emvLastStatus` property.

#### Parameters

<i>result</i>	- result of the verification method previously informed:	
	<code>AUTH_RESULT_SUCCESS</code>	The method result was successful
	<code>AUTH_RESULT_FAILURE</code>	The method failed
	<code>AUTH_FAIL_PIN_ENTRY_NOT_DONE</code>	PIN entry was bypassed
	<code>AUTH_FAIL_USER_CANCELLATION</code>	PIN entry was cancelled
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	



**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.10 - (BOOL) emvTerminalRisk: (BOOL) *forceProcessing* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

The application risk control is done by this command, including Floorlimit checking, Random selection (only if offline is enabled) and Velocity checking.

If the process can be completed correctly the returned status will be SUCCESS, if any internal error occurs the status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR instead.

**Note**

To complete this process the kernel needs from the application the following data items to have been provided previously: • TAG\_RISK\_AMOUNT (if offline enabled) • TAG\_AMOUNT\_AUTHORISED\_BINARY (if online only) • TAG\_FLOOR\_LIMIT\_CURRENCY (optional) • TAG\_TERMINAL\_FLOOR\_LIMIT • TAG\_THRESHOLD\_VALUE (if offline) • TAG\_TARGET\_PERCENTAGE (if offline) • TAG\_MAX\_TARGET\_PERCENTAGE (if offline) • TAG\_TRANSAC\_CURR\_CODE (optional)

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>forceProcessing</i>	- determine whether the process should be carried out despite of the AIP configuration
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.19.2.11 - (BOOL) emvVerifyPinOffline: (NSError \*\*) *error***

The command allows the application to apply the offline PIN verification (plaintext or encrypted) method.

Depending on the current PIN entry type (plaintext or encrypted) is verified against the card, if the PIN is no valid and is rejected the status EMV\_INVALID\_PIN will be returned if more than one attempt is still available otherwise the status will be EMV\_INVALID\_PIN\_LAST\_ATTEMPT. If a severe error occurs so that the transaction should be terminated immediately, the status EMV\_ABORT\_TRANSACTION will be set. If any kind of internal error occurs during the processing, the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be returned. If the verification cannot be completed due to a missing CA public key, the status returned will be EMV\_INVALID\_KEY. Finally if the PIN is entered and verified correctly the status got will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

**Note**

EMV\_INVALID\_KEY status code will let the application to detect and invalid configuration concerning the CA RSA public keys.

The PIN entry process will have to be accomplished by the application calling to the proper commands provided for that aim.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.20 Issuer Authentication

The commands listed here are intended to process the data coming from the issuer as part of the response to the online authorization request.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvAuthenticateIssuer:](#)  
*The command is used to validate the cryptogram got from the issuer.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvScriptProcessing:error:](#)  
*The script processing retrieved in the online authorization is handled by this command.*

### 2.20.1 Detailed Description

The commands listed here are intended to process the data coming from the issuer as part of the response to the online authorization request.

### 2.20.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.20.2.1 - (BOOL) emvAuthenticateIssuer: (NSError \*\*) error

The command is used to validate the cryptogram got from the issuer.

If the issuer cryptogram was not set previously, the status EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND will be returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs, the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be set. If everything is ok and the cryptogram is verified, the result will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

#### Note

The data item that the application has to provide to the kernel so that this command could be executed is: TAG\_ISSUER\_AUTH\_DATA  
Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.20.2.2 - (BOOL) emvScriptProcessing: (int) type error:(NSError \*\*) error

The script processing retrieved in the online authorization is handled by this command.

First the presence of the script in the data repository is checked, if it's not present the status EMV\_NO\_SCRIPT\_LOADED is returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be set. Once the script has been conveniently processed and issued to the card the status EMV\_SUCCESS will be set.

**Note**

The script data should be provided to the kernel through the data item TAG\_ISSUER\_SCRIPTS, and after the processing is over the results can be recovered by accessing the data item TAG\_ISSUER\_SCRIPTS\_RESULT. The maximum length of the scripts supported is 256 bytes.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>type</i>	- script type to be processed:	
	0x71	SCRIPT_71
	0x72	SCRIPT_72
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.21 General Commands

These commands are not part of the basic transaction management but provide the kernel with more flexibility, and can be used by the application for its own particular requirements.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvUpdateTVRByte:bit:value:error:](#)  
*The command allows modifying the TVR directly, setting or unsetting the desired bits.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvUpdateTSIByte:bit:value:error:](#)  
*The command allows modifying the TSI directly, setting or unsetting the desired bits.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvCheckTVRByte:bit:error:](#)  
*The command is intended to verify an individual bit within the TVR.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvCheckTSIByte:bit:error:](#)  
*The command is intended to verify an individual bit within the TSI.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::emvRemovePublicKey:RID:error:](#)  
*The command is intended to delete a given CA public key.*

### 2.21.1 Detailed Description

These commands are not part of the basic transaction management but provide the kernel with more flexibility, and can be used by the application for its own particular requirements.

### 2.21.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.21.2.1 - (BOOL) emvCheckTSIByte: (int) byte bit:(int) bit error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command is intended to verify an individual bit within the TSI.

Initially the incoming parameters are validated to ensure that are pointing to a valid location within the TSI structure, if that's not the case the status EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR will be returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be set. EMV\_SUCCESS will be returned if the given bit is set otherwise it will be EMV\_FAILURE.

#### Note

The aim of this command is to let the application to achieve any additional procedure that could need as a particular requirement. Consult section List of TVR and TSI bits for a list of the bits.  
Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>byte</i>	- defines the byte number. Accepted values are in the range [1..5]
<i>bit</i>	- defines the bit number. Accepted values are in the range [1..8]
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.21.2.2 - (BOOL) emvCheckTVRByte: (int) byte bit:(int) bit error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command is intended to verify an individual bit within the TVR.

Initially the incoming parameters are validated to ensure that are pointing to a valid location within the TVR structure, if that's not the case the status EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR will be returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be set. EMV\_SUCCESS will be returned if the given bit is set otherwise it will be EMV\_FAILURE.

#### Note

The aim of this command is to let the application to achieve any additional procedure that could need as a particular requirement. Consult section List of TVR and TSI bits for a list of the bits.  
Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>byte</i>	- defines the byte number. Accepted values are in the range [1..5]
<i>bit</i>	- defines the bit number. Accepted values are in the range [1..8]
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.21.2.3 - (BOOL) emvRemovePublicKey: (int) calIndex RID:(NSData \*) RID error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command is intended to delete a given CA public key.

If the input pointer is NULL the status returned will be EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND, if the key cannot be found the EMV\_INVALID\_KEY status will be got. If during the processing any internal error occurs the returned status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. Finally if the key can be deleted the status will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

#### Note

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>RID</i>	- holds the RID data (5 bytes)
<i>calIndex</i>	- certification authority public key index
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.21.2.4 - (BOOL) emvUpdateTSIByte: (int) byte bit:(int) bit value:(int) value error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command allows modifying the TSI directly, setting or unsetting the desired bits.

Initially the incoming parameters are validated to ensure that are pointing to a valid location within the TSI structure, if that's not the case the status EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR will be returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be set. EMV\_SUCCESS will be returned if everything is correct and the TVR could be updated.

#### Note

The aim of this command is to let the application to achieve any additional procedure that could need as a particular requirement. Consult section List of TVR and TSI bits for a list of the bits.  
Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

## Parameters

<i>byte</i>	- defines the byte number to update. Accepted values are in the range [1..5]
<i>bit</i>	- defines the bit number to update. Accepted values are in the range [1..8]
<i>value</i>	- holds the new bit value [0..1]
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.21.2.5 - (BOOL) emvUpdateTVRByte: (int) *byte* bit:(int) *bit* value:(int) *value* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

The command allows modifying the TVR directly, setting or unsetting the desired bits.

Initially the incoming parameters are validated to ensure that are pointing to a valid location within the TVR structure. If that's not the case, the status EMV\_DATA\_FORMAT\_ERROR will be returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs, the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be set. EMV\_SUCCESS will be returned if everything is correct and the TVR could be updated.

## Note

The aim of this command is to let the application to achieve any additional procedure that could need as a particular requirement. Consult section List of TVR and TSI bits below for the complete list of the bits. Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

## Parameters

<i>byte</i>	- defines the byte number to update. Accepted values are in the range [1..5]
<i>bit</i>	- defines the bit number to update. Accepted values are in the range [1..8]
<i>value</i>	- holds the new bit value [0..1]
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.22 Data Access

The commands described below are used to access the data items used by the kernel.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emvSetDataAsBinary:data:error:`  
The command sets a data item with data in binary format (raw data).
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emvSetDataAsString:data:error:`  
The command sets a data item with data in string format.
- (NSData \*) - `DTDevices::emvGetDataAsBinary:error:`  
The command gets a data item in binary format (raw data).
- (NSString \*) - `DTDevices::emvGetDataAsString:error:`  
The command gets a data item in string format.
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emvGetDataDetails:tagType:maxLen:currentLen:error:`  
The command allows the application direct access to the data of a given item.
- (BOOL) - `DTDevices::emvSetBypassMode:error:`  
With this command is possible to setup the behavior of the KERNEL regarding the PIN based method bypass, so that only the current method will be bypassed or any other found later in the CVM list will be considered so as well.

### 2.22.1 Detailed Description

The commands described below are used to access the data items used by the kernel.

### 2.22.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.22.2.1 - (NSData \*) emvGetDataAsBinary: (uint32\_t) tagID error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command gets a data item in binary format (raw data).

If the length of the data item is greater than the length of the buffer requested the status `EMV_INVALID_LENGTH` will be set, in the case of not finding the requested item the status `EMV_TAG_NOT_FOUND` will be returned. After checking the item attributes, if the item cannot be read the returned status will be `EMV_INVALID_TAG`. If during the processing any internal error occurs the returned status will be `EMV_SYSTEM_ERROR`. Finally if everything is OK and the data can be extracted the status will be `EMV_SUCCESS`.

#### Note

Using this method there's no applicable conversion, so the data retrieved is in the format that corresponds to the data item. Consult section List of EMV tags for a list of the data items.  
Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in `emvLastStatus` property.

#### Parameters

<code>tagID</code>	- holds the Tag Id of the data item
<code>error</code>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

Tag value as data upon success, nil otherwise



### 2.22.2.2 - (NSString \*) emvGetDataAsString: (uint32\_t) tagID error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command gets a data item in string format.

If the length of the data item is greater than the length of the buffer requested the status EMV\_INVALID\_LENGTH will be set, in the case of not finding the requested item the status EMV\_TAG\_NOT\_FOUND will be returned. After checking the item attributes, if the item cannot be read the returned status will be EMV\_INVALID\_TAG. If during the processing any internal error occurs the returned status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. Finally if everything is OK and the data can be extracted the status will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

#### Note

Using this method there's no applicable conversion, so the data retrieved is in the format that corresponds to the data item. Consult section List of EMV tags for a list of the data items.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>tagID</i>	- holds the Tag Id of the data item
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

Tag value as string upon success, nil otherwise

### 2.22.2.3 - (BOOL) emvGetDataDetails: (uint32\_t) tagID tagType:(int \*) tagType maxLen:(int \*) maxLen currentLen:(int \*) currentLen error:(NSError \*\*) error

The command allows the application direct access to the data of a given item.

In the case of not finding the requested item the status EMV\_TAG\_NOT\_FOUND will be returned. If during the processing any internal error occurs, the returned status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. Finally, if everything is OK and the attributes can be extracted, the status will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

#### Warning

The aim of this command is to let the application a direct access to the already assigned buffers of the data items. This could be useful to save and to optimize memory usage. It can be also used to determine the presence of an item or to know its current length.

#### Note

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

#### Parameters

<i>tagID</i>	- holds the Tag Id of the data item	
<i>tagType</i>	- returns the type of the tag:	
	TAG_TYPE_BINARY	Binary data
	TAG_TYPE_BCD	Numeric data (BCD)
	TAG_TYPE_STRING	String data
<i>maxLen</i>	- returns maximum length of the item	
<i>currentLen</i>	- returns current length of the item	
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.22.2.4 - (BOOL) emvSetBypassMode: (BYPASS\_MODES) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error**

With this command is possible to setup the behavior of the KERNEL regarding the PIN based method bypass, so that only the current method will be bypassed or any other found later in the CVM list will be considered so as well.

If any kind of internal error occurs during the processing or the kernel was not initialized before the status EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR will be returned. On the other hand if the value can be set correctly the status got will be EMV\_SUCCESS.

**Note**

If this command is not used along the transaction the default value applied by the kernel will be BYPASS\_CURRENT\_METHOD\_MODE. If the expected behavior is other than the default one the call to this command will have to be done prior to the cardholder authentication procedure and after application selection. Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>mode</i>	- bypass mode, one of:	
	BYPASS_CURRENT_METHOD_MODE	Bypass current method
	BYPASS_ALL_METHODS_MODE	Bypass all methods
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.22.2.5 - (BOOL) emvSetDataAsBinary: (uint32\_t) tagID data:(NSData \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error**

The command sets a data item with data in binary format (raw data).

Initially the input data is validated, if the buffer is NULL the status EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND will be returned, in case of not locating the tag EMV\_TAG\_NOT\_FOUND will be set, if the length of the incoming data is not in the range accepted by the data item the status EMV\_INVALID\_LENGTH will be returned. The data item attributes are checked to determine whether the item can be written or not, if it's not the case the status returned will be EMV\_INVALID\_TAG. If during the processing any internal error occurs the returned status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. Once the data has been saved properly the status EMV\_SUCCESS will be set.

**Note**

Using this method there's no applicable conversion, so the data provided should be in the format that corresponds to the data item to be set. So, in fact, it's like setting a given data item with raw data. Consult section List of EMV tags for a list of the data items.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>tagID</i>	- holds the Tag Id of the data item
<i>data</i>	- holds the Tag Data
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.22.2.6** - (BOOL) emvSetDataAsString: (uint32\_t) *tagID* data:(NSString \*) *data* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

The command sets a data item with data in string format.

Initially the input data is validated, if the buffer is NULL the status EMV\_NO\_DATA\_FOUND will be returned, in case of not locating the tag EMV\_TAG\_NOT\_FOUND will be set, if the length of the incoming data is not in the range accepted by the data item the status EMV\_INVALID\_LENGTH will be returned. The data item attributes are checked to determine whether the item can be written or not, if it's not the case the status returned will be EMV\_INVALID\_TAG. If during the processing any internal error occurs the returned status will be EMV\_SYSTEM\_ERROR. Once the data has been saved properly the status EMV\_SUCCESS will be set.

**Note**

Using this method there's no applicable conversion, so the data provided should be in the format that corresponds to the data item to be set. So, in fact, it's like setting a given data item with raw data. Consult section List of EMV tags for a list of the data items.

Upon successful execution, EMV kernel status is stored in emvLastStatus property.

**Parameters**

<i>tagID</i>	- holds the Tag Id of the data item
<i>data</i>	- holds the Tag Data
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.23 User Interface Functions

This section includes functions for managing the display, reading PIN and keyboard.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiGetScreenInfoWidth:height:colorMode:error:](#)  
*Returns screen properties.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiDrawText:topLeftX:topLeftY:font:error:](#)  
*Display some text, starting at a specified position.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiFillRectangle:topLeftY:width:height:color:error:](#)  
*Fills rectangle on the screen with specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiSetContrast:error:](#)  
*Set display contrast.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiPutPixel:y:color:error:](#)  
*Draws pixel on the screen with specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiDisplayImage:topLeftY:image:error:](#)  
*Displays image on the screen.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiStartAnimation:topLeftX:topLeftY:animated:error:](#)  
*Draws predefined animation on the screen.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiStopAnimation:error:](#)  
*Stops animation playback started with `ppUiStartAnimation`.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiControlLEDsWithBitMask:error:](#)  
*Enables or disables controllable LEDs on the device based on bit mask.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::uiEnableVibrationForTime:error:](#)  
*Activates vibration motor (if available) for a specific time.*

### Properties

- int [DTDevices::uiDisplayWidth](#)  
*Contains display width in pixels.*
- int [DTDevices::uiDisplayHeight](#)  
*Contains display height in pixels.*
- BOOL [DTDevices::uiDisplayAtBottom](#)  
*Contains display height in pixels.*

### 2.23.1 Detailed Description

This section includes functions for managing the display, reading PIN and keyboard.

### 2.23.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.23.2.1 - (BOOL) uiControlLEDsWithBitMask: (uint32\_t) mask error:(NSError \*\*) error

Enables or disables controllable LEDs on the device based on bit mask.

#### Parameters

<i>mask</i>	bit mask of the enabled LEDs, 1 means the bit will be lit, 0 - disabled
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

2.23.2.2 - (BOOL) uiDisplayImage: (int) *topLeftX* topLeftY:(int) *topLeftY* image:(UIImage \*) *image* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Displays image on the screen.

The image is dithered down to black and white before sending.

## Parameters

<i>topLeftX</i>	- topleft X coordinate of the image in pixels
<i>topLeftY</i>	- topleft Y coordinate of the image in pixels
<i>image</i>	- image to draw
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

2.23.2.3 - (BOOL) uiDrawText: (NSString \*) *text* topLeftX:(int) *topLeftX* topLeftY:(int) *topLeftY* font:(FONT) *font* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Display some text, starting at a specified position.

The text can contain control symbols that alter cursor position, colors or whole window. Characters going outside the screen will not be drawn.

## Parameters

<i>text</i>	- text string to write. Special codes that can be used are:	
	0x0A	newline (moves cursor at the beginning of the next line)
	0x0B	turns on character inversion
	0x0C	turns of character inversion
<i>topLeftX</i>	- topleft X coordinate in pixels	
<i>topLeftY</i>	- topleft Y coordinate in pixels	
<i>font</i>	font size, one of the FONT_* constants	
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it	

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

2.23.2.4 - (BOOL) uiEnableVibrationForTime: (float) *time* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Activates vibration motor (if available) for a specific time.

## Parameters

<i>time</i>	the maximum amount of time the vibration will be active
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.23.2.5** - (BOOL) uiFillRectangle: (int) *topLeftX* topLeftY:(int) *topLeftY* width:(int) *width* height:(int) *height* color:(UIColor \*) *color* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Fills rectangle on the screen with specified color.

## Parameters

<i>topLeftX</i>	- topleft X coordinate of the rectangle in pixels
<i>topLeftY</i>	- topleft Y coordinate of the rectangle in pixels
<i>width</i>	- rectangle width in pixels or 0 for automatic calculation
<i>height</i>	- rectangle height in pixels or 0 for automatic calculation
<i>color</i>	- the color to use, either COLOR_INVERT or custom UIColor
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.23.2.6** - (BOOL) uiGetScreenInfoWidth: (int \*) *width* height:(int \*) *height* colorMode:(SCREEN\_COLOR\_MODES \*) *colorMode* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Returns screen properties.

## Parameters

<i>width</i>	screen width in pixels will be returned here
<i>height</i>	screen height in pixels will be returned here
<i>color</i>	screen capability to display colors will be returned here, one of the COLOR_MODE_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.23.2.7** - (BOOL) uiPutPixel: (int) *x* y:(int) *y* color:(UIColor \*) *color* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Draws pixel on the screen with specified color.

## Parameters

<i>x</i>	- X coordinate in pixels
<i>y</i>	- Y coordinate in pixels
<i>color</i>	- the color to use, either COLOR_INVERT or custom UIColor
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.23.2.8 - (BOOL) uiSetContrast: (int) *contrast* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Set display contrast.

**Parameters**

<i>contrast</i>	- display contrast
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.23.2.9 - (BOOL) uiStartAnimation: (ANIMATIONS) *animationIndex* topLeftX:(int) *topLeftX* topLeftY:(int) *topLeftY* animated:(BOOL) *animated* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Draws predefined animation on the screen.

You can have multiple animations active. Not all animations are present in every pinpad.

**Parameters**

<i>animationIndex</i>	- animation index, one of the ANIM_* constants
<i>topLeftX</i>	- topleft X coordinate of the animation in pixels
<i>topLeftY</i>	- topleft Y coordinate of the animation in pixels
<i>animated</i>	- if TRUE, the animation will play continuous until stopped with ppUiStopAnimation
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

**2.23.2.10 - (BOOL) uiStopAnimation: (ANIMATIONS) *animationIndex* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Stops animation playback started with ppUiStartAnimation.

**Parameters**

<i>animationIndex</i>	- animation index, one of the ANIM_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE if function succeeded, FALSE otherwise

## 2.24 Printing functions

Functions to print graphic, text and barcodes on supported printers.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnFlushCache:](#)  
*Forces data still in the sdk buffers to be sent directly to the printer.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnWaitPrintJob:error:](#)  
*Waits specified timeout for the printout to complete.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnGetPrinterStatus:error:](#)  
*Retrieves current printer status.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnSelfTest:error:](#)  
*Prints selftest.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnTurnOff:](#)  
*Forces printer to turn off.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnFeedPaper:error:](#)  
*Feeds the paper X lines (1/203 of the inch) or as needed (different length based on the printer model) so it allows paper to be teared.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnPrintBarcode:barcode:error:](#)  
*Prints barcode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnPrintLogo:error:](#)  
*Prints the stored logo.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnSetBarcodeSettings:height:hriPosition:align:error:](#)  
*Set various barcode parameters.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnSetDensity:error:](#)  
*Sets printer density level.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnSetLineSpace:error:](#)  
*Sets the line "height" in pixels If the characters are 16 pixels high for example, setting the linespace to 20 will make the printer leave 4 blank lines before next line of text starts.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnSetLeftMargin:error:](#)  
*Sets left margin.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnPrintText:usingEncoding:error:](#)  
*Prints text with specified font/styles.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnPrintText:error:](#)  
*Prints text with specified font/styles.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnPrintDelimiter:error:](#)  
*Prints the delimiter character at the whole width of the paper, adjusting itself to the paper width.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnGetBlackMarkTreshold:error:](#)  
*Returns blackmark sensor treshold or UnsupportedOperationException if printer is not in blackmark mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnSetBlackMarkTreshold:error:](#)  
*Sets blackmark sensor treshold or UnsupportedOperationException if printer is not in blackmark mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnCalibrateBlackMark:error:](#)  
*Provides blackmark sensor calibration by scanning 200mm of paper for possible black marks and adjust the sensor treshold.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnLoadLogo:align:error:](#)  
*Loads logo into printer's memory.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::prnPrintImage:align:error:](#)  
*Prints Bitmap object using specified alignment.*



### 2.24.1 Detailed Description

Functions to print graphic, text and barcodes on supported printers.

### 2.24.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.24.2.1 - (BOOL) prnCalibrateBlackMark: (int \*) *threshold* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Provides blackmark sensor calibration by scanning 200mm of paper for possible black marks and adjust the sensor threshold.

Make sure you have put the right paper before calling this function.

##### Returns

returns new trashold value for the scanned paper. The trashold is already stored in printer's flash memory so no additional set is needed.

##### Parameters

<i>threshold</i>	upon sucess, the black mark treshold will be returned here
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

##### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.24.2.2 - (BOOL) prnFeedPaper: (int) *lines* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Feeds the paper X lines (1/203 of the inch) or as needed (different length based on the printer model) so it allows paper to be teared.

##### Note

If blackmark mode is active, this function searches for blackmark. If the paper is not blackmark one or the mark can not be found in 360mm, the printer will put itself into out of paper state and will need LF button to be pushed to continue.

##### Parameters

<i>lines</i>	the number of lines (1/203 of the inch) to feed or 0 to automatically feed the paper as much as needed to tear the paper.
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

##### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.24.2.3 - (BOOL) prnFlushCache: (NSError \*\*) *error*

Forces data still in the sdk buffers to be sent directly to the printer.

##### Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.4 - (BOOL) prnGetBlackMarkThreshold: (int \*) threshold error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Returns blackmark sensor threshold or UnsupportedOperationException if printer is not in blackmark mode.

This value tells the printer how dark a spot on the paper needs to be in order to be considered as blackmark.

**Parameters**

<i>threshold</i>	upon success stores the current blackmark threshold
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.5 - (BOOL) prnGetPrinterStatus: (int \*) status error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Retrieves current printer status.

This function is useful on printers having no automatic status notifications like DPP-250 and DPP-350.

**Parameters**

<i>status</i>	upon successful execution, printer status (one or more of the PRN_STAT_* constants) will be stored here
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.6 - (BOOL) prnLoadLogo: (UIImage \*) logo align:(int) align error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Loads logo into printer's memory.

The logo is persistent and can be deleted only if battery is removed

**Parameters**

<i>logo</i>	logo bitmap data
<i>align</i>	logo alignment, one of the ALIGN_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.7 - (BOOL) prnPrintBarcode: (int) bartype barcode:(NSData \*) barcode error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Prints barcode.

## Parameters

<i>bartype</i>	Barcode type, one of the BAR_PRN_* constants
<i>barcode</i>	barcode data to be printed
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.8 - (BOOL) prnPrintDelimiter: (char) delimchar error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Prints the delimiter character at the whole width of the paper, adjusting itself to the paper width.

The character is printed with font 12x24

## Parameters

<i>delimchar</i>	character to print
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.9 - (BOOL) prnPrintImage: (UIImage \*) image align:(int) align error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Prints Bitmap object using specified alignment.

You can print color bitmaps, as they will be converted to black and white using error diffusion and dithering to achieve best results. On older devices this can take some time

## Parameters

<i>image</i>	UIImage object
<i>align</i>	image alignment, one of the ALIGN_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.10 - (BOOL) prnPrintLogo: (int) mode error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Prints the stored logo.

You can upload log with [logo](#) function

## Parameters

<i>mode</i>	logo mode, one of the LOGO_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.24.2.11 - (BOOL) prnPrintText: (NSString \*) *textString* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Prints text with specified font/styles.

This function can act as both simple plain text printing and quite complex printing using internal tags to format the text. The function uses the currently font size and style (or default ones) as well as the aligning, however it allows modifications of them inside the text. Any modification of the settings using the tags will be reverted when function completes execution. For example if you have default font selected before using printText and set bold font inside, it will be reverted to plain when function completes. The tags are control commands used to modify the text printing parameters. They are surrounded by {} brackets. A list of all control tags follows:

- {==} - reverts all settings to their defaults. It includes font size, style, aligning
- {=Fx} - selects font size. x ranges from 0 to 1 as follows:
  - 0: FONT\_9X16 (hieroglyph characters are using the same width as height, i.e. 16x16)
  - 1: FONT\_12X24 (hieroglyph characters are using the same width as height, i.e. 24x24)
- {=L} - left text aligning
- {=C} - center text aligning
- {=R} - right text aligning
- {=Rx} - text rotation as follows:
  - 0: not rotated
  - 1: rotated 90 degrees
  - 2: rotated 180 degrees
- {+/-B} - sets or unsets bold font style
- {+/-I} - sets or unsets italic font style
- {+/-U} - sets or unsets underline font style
- {+/-V} - sets or unsets inverse font style
- {+/-W} - sets or unsets text word-wrapping
- {+/-DW} - sets or unsets doubled font width
- {+/-DH} - sets or unsets doubled font height

An example of using tags "{=C}Plain centered text\n{=L}Left centered\n{+B}...bold...{-B}{+I}or ITALIC"

##### Parameters

<i>textString</i>	the text to print
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

##### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.24.2.12 - (BOOL) prnPrintText: (NSString \*) *textString* usingEncoding:(NSStringEncoding) *encoding* error:(NSError \*\*) *error*

Prints text with specified font/styles.

This function can act as both simple plain text printing and quite complex printing using internal tags to format the text. The function uses the currently font size and style (or default ones) as well as the aligning, however it allows

modifications of them inside the text. Any modification of the settings using the tags will be reverted when function completes execution. For example if you have default font selected before using `printText` and set bold font inside, it will be reverted to plain when function completes. The tags are control commands used to modify the text printing parameters. They are surrounded by `{}` brackets. A list of all control tags follows:

- `{==}` - reverts all settings to their defaults. It includes font size, style, aligning
- `{=Fx}` - selects font size. x ranges from 0 to 1 as follows:
  - 0: FONT\_9X16 (hieroglyph characters are using the same width as height, i.e. 16x16)
  - 1: FONT\_12X24 (hieroglyph characters are using the same width as height, i.e. 24x24)
- `{=L}` - left text aligning
- `{=C}` - center text aligning
- `{=R}` - right text aligning
- `{=Rx}` - text rotation as follows:
  - 0: not rotated
  - 1: rotated 90 degrees
  - 2: rotated 180 degrees
- `{+/-B}` - sets or unsets bold font style
- `{+/-I}` - sets or unsets italic font style
- `{+/-U}` - sets or unsets underline font style
- `{+/-V}` - sets or unsets inverse font style
- `{+/-W}` - sets or unsets text word-wrapping
- `{+/-DW}` - sets or unsets doubled font width
- `{+/-DH}` - sets or unsets doubled font height

An example of using tags `"{=C}Plain centered text\n{=L}Left centered\n{+B}...bold...{-B}{+I}or ITALIC"`

#### Parameters

<i>textString</i>	the text to print
<i>encoding</i>	the encoding to use when converting the string to format suitable to the printer. Default encoding should be <code>NSWindowsCP1252StringEncoding</code> . Currently double-byte encodings like JIS are not supported.
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

#### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.24.2.13 - (BOOL) prnSelfTest: (BOOL) longest error:(NSError \*\*) error

Prints selftest.

#### Parameters

<i>longtest</i>	TRUE if you want complete test with fonts and codepage, FALSE for short one
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.14 - (BOOL) prnSetBarcodeSettings: (int) *scale* height:(int) *height* hriPosition:(int) *hriPosition* align:(int) *align* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Set various barcode parameters.

**Parameters**

<i>scale</i>	width of each barcode column in pixels (1/203 of the inch) between 2 and 4, default is 3
<i>height</i>	barcode height in pixels between 1 and 255. Default is 77
<i>hriPosition</i>	barcode hri code position, one of the BAR_TEXT_* constants
<i>align</i>	barcode aligning, one of the ALIGN_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.15 - (BOOL) prnSetBlackMarkTreshold: (int) *treshold* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets blackmark sensor treshold or UnsupportedOperationException if printer is not in blackmark mode.

This value tells the printer how dark a spot on the paper needs to be in order to be considered as blackmark.

**Parameters**

<i>treshold</i>	value between 0x20 and 0xc0, default is 0x68
-----------------	--

**Exceptions**

<i>NSPortTimeoutException</i>	if there is no connection to the printer
-------------------------------	--

**2.24.2.16 - (BOOL) prnSetDensity: (int) *percent* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets printer density level.

**Parameters**

<i>percent</i>	density level in percents (50%-200%)
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.17 - (BOOL) prnSetLeftMargin: (int) *leftMargin* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets left margin.

## Parameters

<i>leftMargin</i>	left margin in pixels. Default is 0
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.18 - (BOOL) prnSetLineSpace: (int) *lineSpace* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets the line "height" in pixels. If the characters are 16 pixels high for example, setting the linespace to 20 will make the printer leave 4 blank lines before next line of text starts.

You cannot make text lines overlap.

## Parameters

<i>lineSpace</i>	linespace in pixels, or 0 for automatic calculation. Default is 0
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.19 - (BOOL) prnTurnOff: (NSError \*\*) *error***

Forces printer to turn off.

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.24.2.20 - (BOOL) prnWaitPrintJob: (NSTimeInterval) *timeout* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Waits specified timeout for the printout to complete.

It is best to call this function with the complete timeout you are willing to wait, rather than calling it in a loop

## Parameters

<i>timeout</i>	the timeout to wait for the job to finish
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE if printer have successfully finished printing and ready to accept new data, FALSE if communication problem or the printer is still busy

## 2.25 Printing Page Mode Functions

Functions to work with the printer's page mode.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageIsSupported](#)  
*Returns TRUE if page mode is supported on the connected device.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageStart:](#)  
*Creates a new virtual page using the maximum supported page height.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pagePrint:](#)  
*Prints the content of the virtual page.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageEnd:](#)  
*Exits page mode.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:error:](#)  
*Sets a working area and orientation inside the virtual page.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:orientation:error:](#)  
*Sets a working area and orientation inside the virtual page.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageFillRectangle:error:](#)  
*Fills the current working area (or whole page if none is set) with the specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageFillRectangle:top:width:height:color:error:](#)  
*Fills a rectangle inside the current working area with specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::pageRectangleFrame:top:width:height:framewidth:color:error:](#)  
*Draws a rectangle frame inside the current working area with specified color.*

### 2.25.1 Detailed Description

Functions to work with the printer's page mode. Page mode is a special operation mode, that allows you to define a virtual page and then draw inside text, graphics, barcodes and print it all at once. Page mode allows for extended positioning of the elements, rotation, inversion and basic graphics elements.

### 2.25.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.25.2.1 - (BOOL) pageEnd: (NSError \*\*) error

Exits page mode.

##### Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

##### Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.25.2.2 - (BOOL) pageFillRectangle: (UIColor \*) color error:(NSError \*\*) error

Fills the current working area (or whole page if none is set) with the specified color.



## Parameters

<i>color</i>	- the color to use, either COLOR_INVERT or custom UIColor
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.25.2.3 - (BOOL) pageFillRectangle: (int) left top:(int) top width:(int) width height:(int) height color:(UIColor \*) color error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Fills a rectangle inside the current working area with specified color.

## Parameters

<i>left,top,width,height</i>	rectangle coordinates
<i>color</i>	- the color to use, either COLOR_INVERT or custom UIColor
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.25.2.4 - (BOOL) pagePrint: (NSError \*\*) error**

Prints the content of the virtual page.

## Note

The white space from the top and bottom is not printed so the print ends at the last black dot. If you want to feed the paper use the [error:\(NSError \\*\\*\)error](#) function

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.25.2.5 - (BOOL) pageRectangleFrame: (int) left top:(int) top width:(int) width height:(int) height framewidth:(int) framewidth color:(UIColor \*) color error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Draws a rectangle frame inside the current working area with specified color.

## Parameters

<i>left,top,width,height</i>	rectangle coordinates
<i>framewidth</i>	width of the frame (1-64)
<i>color</i>	- the color to use, either COLOR_INVERT or custom UIColor
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.25.2.6 - (BOOL) pageSetWorkingArea: (int) left top:(int) top width:(int) width height:(int) height error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sets a working area and orientation inside the virtual page.

No drawing can ever occur outside the said area

**Parameters**

<i>left,top,width,height</i>	working area rectangle in absolute pixels (i.e. does not depend on the page orientation)
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.25.2.7 - (BOOL) pageSetWorkingArea: (int) left top:(int) top width:(int) width height:(int) height orientation:(int) orientation error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Sets a working area and orientation inside the virtual page.

No drawing can ever occur outside the said area

**Parameters**

<i>left,top,width,height</i>	working area rectangle in absolute pixels (i.e. does not depend on the page orientation)
<i>orientation</i>	one of the PAGE_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.25.2.8 - (BOOL) pageStart: (NSError \*\*) error**

Creates a new virtual page using the maximum supported page height.

Use [getInfo:\(int\)infoCmd](#) to get the maximum page height supported. See [pageStart](#) for more detailed information. The page mode allows constructing a virtual page inside the printer, draw text, graphics, and performs some basic graphics operations (draw rectangles, frames, invert parts of the page) at any place, rotated or not, then print the result. Page mode is useful if you want to create some non-standart printout, or print vertically. Tables functions also work in page mode allowing a huge tables to be created and printed vertically.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.26 Printing Table Functions

Functions to create, fill and print tables.

### Functions

- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableIsSupported](#)  
*Checks if the currently connected printer supports tables.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableCreate:error:](#)  
*Create a new table using custom flags.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableCreate:](#)  
*Create a new table using default settings - both horizontal and vertical borders around it.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddColumn:](#)  
*Adds a new column using default settings - 12x24 font, plain, vertical border between the cells, left aligning.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddColumn:error:](#)  
*Adds a new column using default settings - plain text, vertical border between the cells, left aligning.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddColumn:style:alignment:error:](#)  
*Adds a new column using custom font and vertical border between the cells.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddColumn:style:alignment:flags:error:](#)  
*Adds a new column.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddCell:error:](#)  
*Adds a new cell using the font size and style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddCell:font:error:](#)  
*Adds a new cell using the font style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddCell:font:style:error:](#)  
*Adds a new cell using custom font size and style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddCell:font:style:alignment:error:](#)  
*Adds a new cell using custom font size and style and aligning.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableAddDelimiter:](#)  
*Adds a horizontal black line to the entire row that separates it from the next.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tableSetRowHeight:error:](#)  
*Sets the row height that will be used by default for new cells added.*
- (BOOL) - [DTDevices::tablePrint:](#)  
*Prints current table or throws `IllegalArgumentException` if cell data cannot be fit into paper.*

### 2.26.1 Detailed Description

Functions to create, fill and print tables.

### 2.26.2 Function Documentation

#### 2.26.2.1 - (BOOL) tableAddCell: (NSString \*) data error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new cell using the font size and style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.

#### Parameters

<i>data</i>	string data
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.26.2.2 - (BOOL) tableAddCell: (NSString \*) data font:(int) font error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new cell using the font style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.

## Parameters

<i>data</i>	string data
<i>font</i>	font size, one of the FONT_size constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.26.2.3 - (BOOL) tableAddCell: (NSString \*) data font:(int) font style:(int) style alignment:(int) alignment error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new cell using custom font size and style and aligning.

## Parameters

<i>data</i>	string data
<i>font</i>	font size, one of the FONT_size constants
<i>style</i>	one or more of the font style constants (FONT_BOLD, FONT_ITALIC, etc)
<i>alignment</i>	date aligning, one of the ALIGN_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.26.2.4 - (BOOL) tableAddCell: (NSString \*) data font:(int) font style:(int) style error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new cell using custom font size and style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.

## Parameters

<i>data</i>	string data
<i>font</i>	font size, one of the FONT_size constants
<i>style</i>	one or more of the font style constants (FONT_BOLD, FONT_ITALIC, etc)
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

#### 2.26.2.5 - (BOOL) tableAddColumn: (NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new column using default settings - 12x24 font, plain, vertical border between the cells, left aligning.

## Parameters

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.26.2.6 - (BOOL) tableAddColumn: (int) font error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new column using default settings - plain text, vertical border between the cells, left aligning.

## Parameters

<i>font</i>	one of the FONT_size constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.26.2.7 - (BOOL) tableAddColumn: (int) font style:(int) style alignment:(int) alignment error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new column using custom font and vertical border between the cells.

## Parameters

<i>font</i>	one of the FONT_size constants
<i>style</i>	one or more of the font style constants (FONT_BOLD, FONT_ITALIC, etc)
<i>alignment</i>	text alignment inside the cell, one of the ALIGN_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

## 2.26.2.8 - (BOOL) tableAddColumn: (int) font style:(int) style alignment:(int) alignment flags:(int) flags error:(NSError \*\*) error

Adds a new column.

## Parameters

<i>font</i>	one of the FONT_size constants
<i>style</i>	one or more of the font style constants (FONT_BOLD, FONT_ITALIC, etc)
<i>alignment</i>	text alignment inside the cell, one of the ALIGN_* constants
<i>flags</i>	one or more of the TABLE_BORDERS_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

## Returns

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.26.2.9 - (BOOL) tableAddDelimiter: (NSError \*\*) error**

Adds aa horizontal black line to the entire row that separates it from the next.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.26.2.10 - (BOOL) tableCreate: (NSError \*\*) error**

Create a new table using default settings - both horizontal and vertical borders around it.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.26.2.11 - (BOOL) tableCreate: (int) flags error:(NSError \*\*) error**

Create a new table using custom flags.

**Parameters**

<i>flags</i>	one or more of the TABLE_BORDERS_* constants
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.26.2.12 - (BOOL) tableIsSupported**

Checks if the currently connected printer supports tables.

**Returns**

TRUE if tables are supported

**2.26.2.13 - (BOOL) tablePrint: (NSError \*\*) error**

Prints current table or throws IllegalArgumentException if cell data cannot be fit into paper.

**Parameters**

<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it
--------------	--

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise

**2.26.2.14 - (BOOL) tableSetRowHeight: (int) *height* error:(NSError \*\*) *error***

Sets the row height that will be used by default for new cells added.

**Parameters**

<i>height</i>	row height, any value less than the characters height will be auto fixed. Default is LINESPACE_DEFAULT
<i>error</i>	returns error information, you can pass nil if you don't want it

**Returns**

TRUE upon success, FALSE otherwise





## Chapter 3

# Class Documentation

### 3.1 <DTDeviceDelegate> Protocol Reference

Protocol describing various notifications that [DTDevices](#) SDK can send.

#### Instance Methods

- (void) - [connectionState:](#)  
*Notifies about the current connection state.*
- (void) - [deviceButtonPressed:](#)  
*Notification sent when some of the device's buttons is pressed.*
- (void) - [deviceButtonReleased:](#)  
*Notification sent when some of the device's buttons is released.*
- (void) - [barcodeData:type:](#)  
*Notification sent when barcode is successfully read.*
- (void) - [barcodeData:isotype:](#)  
*Notification sent when barcode is successfully read.*
- (void) - [magneticCardData:track2:track3:](#)  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - [magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:](#)  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - [magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:track1masked:track2masked:track3:](#)  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - [magneticCardRawData:](#)  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - [magneticCardEncryptedRawData:data:](#)  
*Notification sent when magnetic card is successfully read.*
- (void) - [firmwareUpdateProgress:percent:](#)  
*Notification sent when firmware update process advances.*
- (void) - [bluetoothDiscoverComplete:](#)  
*Notification sent when bluetooth discovery finds new bluetooth device.*
- (void) - [bluetoothDeviceDiscovered:name:](#)  
*Notification sent when bluetooth discovery finds new bluetooth device.*
- (void) - **bluetoothDeviceConnected:**
- (void) - **bluetoothDeviceDisconnected:**
- (void) - [magneticJISCardData:](#)  
*Notification sent when JIS I & II magnetic card is successfully read.*

- (void) - [rfCardDetected:info:](#)  
*Notification sent when a new supported RFID card enters the field.*
- (void) - [rfCardRemoved:](#)  
*Notification sent when the card leaves the field.*
- (void) - [deviceFeatureSupported:value:](#)  
*Notification sent when some of the features gets enabled or disabled.*
- (void) - [smartCardInserted:](#)  
*Notification sent when smartcard was inserted.*
- (void) - [smartCardRemoved:](#)  
*Notification sent when smartcard was removed.*
- (void) - [PINEntryCompleteWithError:](#)  
*Notification sent when PIN entry procedure have completed or was cancelled.*
- (void) - [paperStatus:](#)  
*Notification sent when printer's paper sensor changes.*

### 3.1.1 Detailed Description

Protocol describing various notifications that [DTDevices](#) SDK can send.

## 3.2 DTDevices Class Reference

Provides universal access to all supported devices' functions.

Inherits NSObject.

### Public Types

- enum **APP\_SELECTION\_METHODS** { SELECTION\_PSE =0, SELECTION\_AIDLIST }
- enum **APP\_MATCH\_CRITERIAS** { MATCH\_FULL =1, MATCH\_PARTIAL\_VISA, MATCH\_PARTIAL\_EUROPAY }
- enum **AUTH\_RESULTS** { AUTH\_RESULT\_SUCCESS =1, AUTH\_RESULT\_FAILURE, AUTH\_FAIL\_PIN\_ENTRY\_NOT\_DONE, AUTH\_FAIL\_USER\_CANCELLATION }
- enum **BYPASS\_MODES** { BYPASS\_CURRENT\_METHOD\_MODE =0, BYPASS\_ALL\_METHODS\_MODE }
- enum **CERTIFICATE\_AC\_TYPES** { CERTIFICATE\_AAC =0, CERTIFICATE\_TC, CERTIFICATE\_ARQC }
- enum **CARD\_RISK\_TYPES** { CDOL\_1 =1, CDOL\_2 }
- enum **TAG\_TYPES** { TAG\_TYPE\_BINARY =0, TAG\_TYPE\_BCD, TAG\_TYPE\_STRING }

### Instance Methods

- (void) - [addDelegate:](#)  
*Allows unlimited delegates to be added to a single class instance.*
- (void) - [removeDelegate:](#)  
*Removes delegate, previously added with addDelegate.*
- (void) - [connect](#)  
*Tries to connect to supported devices in the background, connection status notifications will be passed through the delegate.*
- (void) - [disconnect](#)  
*Stops the sdk from trying to connect to supported devices and breaks existing connections.*
- (BOOL) - **isPresent:**
- (BOOL) - [setActiveDeviceType:error:](#)

The sdk can work with many devices at the same time, but some functions can be executed on a single device at a time (for example `barcodeStartScan`), this function sets the preferred device to execute the function by type.

- (BOOL) - [getBatteryCapacity:voltage:error:](#)  
Returns active device's battery capacity.
- (BOOL) - [playSound:beepData:length:error:](#)  
Plays a sound using the built-in speaker on the active device.
- (BOOL) - [getCharging:error:](#)  
Returns if the connected device is charging the iOS device from its own battery.
- (BOOL) - [setCharging:error:](#)  
Enables or disables Linea's capability to charge the handheld from its own battery.
- (NSDictionary \*) - [getFirmwareFileInformation:error:](#)  
Returns information about the specified firmware data.
- (BOOL) - [updateFirmwareData:error:](#)  
Updates connected device's firmware with specified firmware data.
- (int) - [getSupportedFeature:error:](#)  
Returns if a feature is supported on connected device(s) and what type it is.
- (BOOL) - [msEnable:](#)  
Enables reading of magnetic cards.
- (BOOL) - [msDisable:](#)  
Disables magnetic card reading.
- (NSDictionary \*) - [msProcessFinancialCard:track2:](#)  
Helper function to parse financial card and extract the data - name, number, expiration date.
- (BOOL) - [msSetCardDataMode:error:](#)  
Sets Linea's magnetic card data mode.
- (NSString \*) - [barcodeType2Text:](#)  
Helper function to return string name of barcode type.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeStartScan:](#)  
Starts barcode engine.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeStopScan:](#)  
Stops ongoing scan started with `startScan`.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeGetScanButtonMode:error:](#)  
Returns the current scan button mode.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeSetScanButtonMode:error:](#)  
Sets scan button mode.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeSetScanBeep:volume:beepData:length:error:](#)  
Sets the sound, which is used upon successful barcode scan.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeGetScanMode:error:](#)  
Returns the current scan mode.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeSetScanMode:error:](#)  
Sets barcode engine scan mode.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeGetTypeMode:error:](#)  
Returns the current barcode type mode.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeSetTypeMode:error:](#)  
Sets barcode type mode.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeEngineResetToDefaults:](#)  
Performs factory reset of the barcode module.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeOpticonSetInitString:error:](#)  
Allows for a custom initialization string to be sent to the Opticon barcode engine.
- (BOOL) - [barcodeOpticonSetParams:saveToFlash:error:](#)  
Sends configuration parameters directly to the opticon barcode engine.
- (NSString \*) - [barcodeOpticonGetIdent:](#)

- Reads barcode engine's identification.*
- (BOOL) - [barcodeOpticonUpdateFirmware:bootLoader:error:](#)  
*Performs firmware update on the opticon 2D barcode engines.*
- (BOOL) - [barcodeCodeSetParam:value:error:](#)  
*Sends configuration parameters directly to the code barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [barcodeCodeGetParam:value:error:](#)  
*Reads configuration parameters directly from the code barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [barcodeCodeUpdateFirmware:data:error:](#)  
*Performs firmware update on the Code 2D barcode engines.*
- (NSDictionary \*) - **barcodeCodeGetInformation:**
- (BOOL) - [barcodeIntermecSetInitData:error:](#)  
*Allows for a custom initialization string to be sent to the Intermec barcode engine.*
- (BOOL) - [btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground:maxTime:filter:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of nearby supported bluetooth devices.*
- (BOOL) - [btDiscoverDevicesInBackground:maxTime:codTypes:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of the nearby bluetooth devices.*
- (BOOL) - [btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:maxTime:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:maxTime:error:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:](#)  
*Performs background discovery of supported printers.*
- (BOOL) - [btConnect:pin:error:](#)  
*Tries to connect to remote device.*
- (BOOL) - [btDisconnect:error:](#)  
*Disconnects from remote device.*
- (BOOL) - [btConnectSupportedDevice:pin:error:](#)  
*Tries to connect to supported bluetooth device.*
- (BOOL) - [btWrite:length:error:](#)  
*Sends data to the connected remote device.*
- (BOOL) - [btWrite:error:](#)  
*Sends data to the connected remote device.*
- (int) - [btRead:length:timeout:error:](#)  
*Tries to read data from the connected remote device for specified timeout.*
- (NSString \*) - [btReadLine:error:](#)  
*Tries to read string data, ending with CR/LF up to specifed timeout.*
- (BOOL) - [btEnableWriteCaching:error:](#)  
*Enables or disables write caching on the bluetooth stream.*
- (NSArray \*) - [btDiscoverDevices:maxTime:codTypes:error:](#)  
*Performs synchronous discovery of the nearby bluetooth devices.*
- (NSString \*) - [btGetDeviceName:error:](#)  
*Queries device name given the address.*
- (BOOL) - [btSetDataNotificationMaxTime:maxLength:sequenceData:error:](#)  
*Sets the conditions to fire the NSStreamEventHasBytesAvailable event on bluetooth streams.*
- (BOOL) - [extOpenSerialPort:baudRate:parity:dataBits:stopBits:flowControl:error:](#)  
*Opens the external serial port with specified settings.*
- (BOOL) - [extCloseSerialPort:error:](#)  
*Closes the external serial port opened with extOpenSerialPort.*
- (BOOL) - [extWriteSerialPort:data:error:](#)

- Sends data to the connected remote device via serial port.*
- (NSData \*) - [extReadSerialPort:length:timeout:error:](#)
- Reads data from the connected remote device via serial port.*
- (BOOL) - [tcpConnectSupportedDevice:error:](#)
- Tries to connect to supported device over the network.*
- (BOOL) - [tcpDisconnect:error:](#)
- Disconnects from remote device.*
- (NSData \*) - [cryptoRawGenerateRandomData:](#)
- Generates 16 byte block of random numbers, required for some of the other crypto functions.*
- (BOOL) - [cryptoRawSetKey:encryptedData:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [cryptoSetKey:key:oldKey:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:](#)
- Used to store AES256 keys into Linea internal memory.*
- (BOOL) - [cryptoGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:](#)
- Returns key version.*
- (NSData \*) - [cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [cryptoAuthenticateDevice:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [cryptoRawAuthenticateHost:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [cryptoAuthenticateHost:error:](#)
- (NSDictionary \*) - [emsrGetFirmwareInformation:error:](#)
- Returns information about the specified head firmware data.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrIsTampered:error:](#)
- Checks if the head was tampered or not.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:](#)
- Retrieves the key version (if any) of a loaded key.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrLoadInitialKey:error:](#)
- Loads Terminal Master Key (TMK) or reenables after tampering.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrLoadKey:error:](#)
- Loads new key, in plain or encrypted with already loaded AES256 Key Encryption Key (KEK).*
- (NSData \*) - [emsrGetDUKPTSerial:](#)
- Returns DUKPT serial number, if DUKPT key is set.*
- (NSString \*) - [emsrGetDeviceModel:](#)
- Returns head's model.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrGetFirmwareVersion:error:](#)
- Returns head's firmware version as number MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrGetSecurityVersion:error:](#)
- Returns head's security version as number MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.*
- (NSData \*) - [emsrGetSerialNumber:](#)
- Return head's unique serial number as byte array.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrUpdateFirmware:error:](#)
- Performs firmware update on the encrypted head.*
- (NSArray \*) - [emsrGetSupportedEncryptions:](#)
- Returns supported encryption algorithms by the encrypted head.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrSetEncryption:params:error:](#)
- Selects the preferred encryption algorithm.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrConfigMaskedDataShowExpiration:unmaskedDigitsAtStart:unmaskedDigitsAtEnd:error:](#)
- Fine-tunes which part of the card data will be masked, and which will be sent in clear text for display/print purposes.*
- (BOOL) - [emsrLoadRSAKeyPEM:version:error:](#)
- (BOOL) - [rfInit:error:](#)
- Initializes and powers on the RF card reader module.*
- (BOOL) - [rfClose:](#)
- Powers down RF card reader module.*

- (BOOL) - [rfRemoveCard:error:](#)  
*Call this function once you are done with the card, a delegate call `rfCardRemoved` will be called when the card leaves the RF field and new card is ready to be detected.*
- (BOOL) - [mfAuthByKey:type:address:key:error:](#)  
*Authenticate mifare card block with direct key data.*
- (BOOL) - [mfStoreKeyIndex:type:key:error:](#)  
*Store key in the internal module memory for later use.*
- (BOOL) - [mfAuthByStoredKey:type:address:keyIndex:error:](#)  
*Authenticate mifare card block with previously stored key.*
- (NSData \*) - [mfRead:address:length:error:](#)  
*Reads one more more blocks of data from Mifare Classic/Ultralight cards.*
- (int) - [mfWrite:address:data:error:](#)  
*Writes one more more blocks of data to Mifare Classic/Ultralight cards.*
- (BOOL) - [mfUlcSetKey:key:error:](#)  
*Sets the 3DES key of Mifare Ultralight C cards.*
- (BOOL) - [mfUlcAuthByKey:key:error:](#)  
*Performs 3DES authentication of Mifare Ultralight C card using the given key.*
- (NSData \*) - [iso15693Read:startBlock:length:error:](#)  
*Reads one more more blocks of data from ISO 15693 card.*
- (int) - [iso15693Write:startBlock:data:error:](#)  
*Writes one more more blocks of data to ISO 15693 card.*
- (NSData \*) - [iso15693GetBlocksSecurityStatus:startBlock:nBlocks:error:](#)  
*Reads the security status of one more more blocks from ISO 15693 card.*
- (BOOL) - [iso15693LockBlock:block:error:](#)  
*Locks a single ISO 15693 card block.*
- (BOOL) - [iso15693WriteAFI:afi:error:](#)  
*Changes ISO 15693 card AFI.*
- (BOOL) - [iso15693LockAFI:error:](#)  
*Locks ISO 15693 AFI preventing further changes.*
- (BOOL) - [iso15693WriteDSFID:dsfid:error:](#)  
*Changes ISO 15693 card DSFID.*
- (BOOL) - [iso15693LockDSFID:error:](#)  
*Locks ISO 15693 card DSFID preventing further changes.*
- (NSData \*) - [felicaRead:startBlock:length:error:](#)  
*Reads one more more blocks of data from FeliCa card.*
- (int) - [felicaWrite:startBlock:data:error:](#)  
*Writes one more more blocks of data to FeliCa card.*
- (BOOL) - [felicaSmartTagGetBatteryStatus:status:error:](#)  
*Returns FeliCa SmartTag battery status.*
- (BOOL) - [felicaSmartTagClearScreen:error:](#)  
*Clears the screen of FeliCa SmartTag.*
- (BOOL) - [felicaSmartTagDrawImage:image:topLeftX:topLeftY:drawMode:layout:error:](#)  
*Draws image on FeliCa SmartTag's screen.*
- (BOOL) - [felicaSmartTagSaveLayout:layout:error:](#)  
*Saves the current display as layout number.*
- (BOOL) - [felicaSmartTagDisplayLayout:layout:error:](#)  
*Displays previously stored layout.*
- (int) - [felicaSmartTagWrite:address:data:error:](#)  
*Writes data in FeliCa SmartTag.*
- (NSData \*) - [felicaSmartTagRead:address:length:error:](#)  
*Writes data in FeliCa SmartTag.*

- (BOOL) - [felicaSmartTagWaitCompletion:error:](#)  
*Waits for FeliCa SmartTag to complete current operation.*
- (BOOL) - [sclnit:error:](#)  
*Initializes SmartCard module.*
- (NSData \*) - [scCardPowerOn:error:](#)  
*Powers on the SmartCard, resets it and returns ATR (Answer To Reset).*
- (BOOL) - [scCardPowerOff:error:](#)  
*Powers off SmartCard, call this function when you are done with the card.*
- (BOOL) - [sclsCardPresent:error:](#)  
*Manually checks if there is a card in the reader.*
- (NSData \*) - [scCAPDU:apdu:error:](#)  
*Performs APDU command in the card.*
- (BOOL) - [scClose:error:](#)  
*Shuts down SmartCard module.*
- (BOOL) - [ppadStartPINEntry:startY:timeout:echoChar:message:error:](#)  
*Initiates asynchronous PIN entry procedure.*
- (BOOL) - [ppadCancelPINEntry:](#)  
*Tries to cancel asynchronous PIN entry procedure.*
- (BOOL) - [ppadMagneticCardEntry:timeout:error:](#)  
*Initiates synchronous magnetic card entry procedure.*
- (NSData \*) - [ppadGetPINBlockUsingFixedKey:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:](#)  
*Gets encrypted pin data using pre-loaded 3DES key The returned data consists of:*
- (NSData \*) - [pinGetPINBlockUsingDUKPT:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:](#)  
*Gets encrypted pin data using DUKPT.*
- (DTKeyInfo \*) - [ppadGetKeyInfo:error:](#)  
*Gets information about some of the keys loaded in the pinpad.*
- (BOOL) - [ppadSetButtonCaption:caption:error:](#)  
*Sets the text that is drawn above functional buttons in MPED400.*
- (BOOL) - [emvATRValidation:warmReset:error:](#)  
*The command is in charge of validating the ATR sequence got from the card to ensure that is fully EMV compliant and that obeys the rules stated in the specification.*
- (BOOL) - [emvLoadAppList:selectionMethod:includeBlockedAIDs:error:](#)  
*The command initiates the application selection process, loading the application list supported by the terminal.*
- (NSArray \*) - [emvGetCommonAppList:error:](#)  
*The command gets back the list of common applications supported by the terminal and the card, actually this commands will end or resume the selection procedure.*
- (BOOL) - [emvInitialAppProcessing:error:](#)  
*Once an application has been selected, the next phase is to start the transaction with it by issuing the GET PROCESSING command and analyzing the information got.*
- (BOOL) - [emvReadAppData:error:](#)  
*The command reads and validates the data informed in the AFL and that will be used along the transaction.*
- (BOOL) - [emvAuthentication:error:](#)  
*Through this command the card data is authenticated depending on the capabilities of the card and the kernel.*
- (BOOL) - [emvProcessRestrictions:](#)  
*The command performs the restrictions processing related to application version, application usage control and effective and expiry dates.*
- (BOOL) - [emvTerminalRisk:error:](#)  
*The application risk control is done by this command, including Floorlimit checking, Random selection (only if offline is enabled) and Velocity checking.*
- (BOOL) - [emvGetAuthenticationMethod:](#)  
*The command starts or resumes the cardholder authentication procedure, the current verification method is communicated to the application.*

- (BOOL) - [emvSetAuthenticationResult:error:](#)  
Using this command the kernel gets the result of the previously informed verification method.
- (BOOL) - [emvVerifyPinOffline:](#)  
The command allows the application to apply the offline PIN verification (plaintext or encrypted) method.
- (BOOL) - [emvGenerateCertificate:risk:error:](#)  
Using this command the application will be able to generate an application cryptogram, the first or the second one, as required by the transaction.
- (BOOL) - [emvMakeTransactionDecision:](#)  
The command checks the action codes (provided by the application and read from the card), the TVR and will determine how the transaction is resolved.
- (BOOL) - [emvMakeDefaultDecision:](#)  
The command checks the default action code (provided by the application and read from the card), the TVR and will determine how the transaction is resolved by default.
- (BOOL) - [emvAuthenticateIssuer:](#)  
The command is used to validate the cryptogram got from the issuer.
- (BOOL) - [emvScriptProcessing:error:](#)  
The script processing retrieved in the online authorization is handled by this command.
- (BOOL) - [emvUpdateTVRByte:bit:value:error:](#)  
The command allows modifying the TVR directly, setting or unsetting the desired bits.
- (BOOL) - [emvUpdateTSIByte:bit:value:error:](#)  
The command allows modifying the TSI directly, setting or unsetting the desired bits.
- (BOOL) - [emvCheckTVRByte:bit:error:](#)  
The command is intended to verify an individual bit within the TVR.
- (BOOL) - [emvCheckTSIByte:bit:error:](#)  
The command is intended to verify an individual bit within the TSI.
- (BOOL) - [emvRemovePublicKey:RID:error:](#)  
The command is intended to delete a given CA public key.
- (BOOL) - [emvSetDataAsBinary:data:error:](#)  
The command sets a data item with data in binary format (raw data).
- (BOOL) - [emvSetDataAsString:data:error:](#)  
The command sets a data item with data in string format.
- (NSData \*) - [emvGetDataAsBinary:error:](#)  
The command gets a data item in binary format (raw data).
- (NSString \*) - [emvGetDataAsString:error:](#)  
The command gets a data item in string format.
- (BOOL) - [emvGetDataDetails:tagType:maxLength:currentLen:error:](#)  
The command allows the application direct access to the data of a given item.
- (BOOL) - [emvSetBypassMode:error:](#)  
With this command is possible to setup the behavior of the KERNEL regarding the PIN based method bypass, so that only the current method will be bypassed or any other found later in the CVM list will be considered so as well.
- (BOOL) - [uiGetScreenInfoWidth:height:colorMode:error:](#)  
Returns screen properties.
- (BOOL) - [uiDrawText:topLeftX:topLeftY:font:error:](#)  
Display some text, starting at a specified position.
- (BOOL) - [uiFillRectangle:topLeftY:width:height:color:error:](#)  
Fills rectangle on the screen with specified color.
- (BOOL) - [uiSetContrast:error:](#)  
Set display contrast.
- (BOOL) - [uiPutPixel:y:color:error:](#)  
Draws pixel on the screen with specified color.
- (BOOL) - [uiDisplayImage:topLeftY:image:error:](#)



- Displays image on the screen.*

  - (BOOL) - [uiStartAnimation:topLeftX:topLeftY:animated:error:](#)
- Draws predefined animation on the screen.*

  - (BOOL) - [uiStopAnimation:error:](#)
- Stops animation playback started with ppUiStartAnimation.*

  - (BOOL) - [uiControlLEDsWithBitMask:error:](#)
- Enables or disables controllable LEDs on the device based on bit mask.*

  - (BOOL) - [uiEnableVibrationForTime:error:](#)
- Activates vibration motor (if available) for a specific time.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnFlushCache:](#)
- Forces data still in the sdk buffers to be sent directly to the printer.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnWaitPrintJob:error:](#)
- Waits specified timeout for the printout to complete.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnGetPrinterStatus:error:](#)
- Retrieves current printer status.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnSelfTest:error:](#)
- Prints selftest.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnTurnOff:](#)
- Forces printer to turn off.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnFeedPaper:error:](#)
- Feeds the paper X lines (1/203 of the inch) or as needed (different length based on the printer model) so it allows paper to be teared.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnPrintBarcode:barcode:error:](#)
- Prints barcode.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnPrintLogo:error:](#)
- Prints the stored logo.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnSetBarcodeSettings:height:hriPosition:align:error:](#)
- Set various barcode parameters.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnSetDensity:error:](#)
- Sets printer density level.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnSetLineSpace:error:](#)
- Sets the line "height" in pixels If the characters are 16 pixelx high for example, setting the linespace to 20 will make the printer leave 4 blank lines before next line of text starts.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnSetLeftMargin:error:](#)
- Sets left margin.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnPrintText:usingEncoding:error:](#)
- Prints text with specified font/styles.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnPrintText:error:](#)
- Prints text with specified font/styles.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnPrintDelimiter:error:](#)
- Prints the delimiter character at the whole width of the paper, adjusting itself to the paper width.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnGetBlackMarkTreshold:error:](#)
- Returns blackmark sensor treshold or UnsupportedOperationException if printer is not in blackmark mode.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnSetBlackMarkTreshold:error:](#)
- Sets blackmark sensor treshold or UnsupportedOperationException if printer is not in blackmark mode.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnCalibrateBlackMark:error:](#)
- Provides blackmark sensor calibration by scanning 200mm of paper for possible black marks and adjust the sensor treshold.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnLoadLogo:align:error:](#)
- Loads logo into printer's memory.*

  - (BOOL) - [prnPrintImage:align:error:](#)

- Prints Bitmap object using specified alignment.*

  - (BOOL) - [pageIsSupported](#)

*Returns TRUE if page mode is supported on the connected device.*
- (BOOL) - [pageStart:](#)

*Creates a new virtual page using the maximum supported page height.*
- (BOOL) - [pagePrint:](#)

*Prints the content of the virtual page.*
- (BOOL) - [pageEnd:](#)

*Exits page mode.*
- (BOOL) - [pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:error:](#)

*Sets a working area and orientation inside the virtual page.*
- (BOOL) - [pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:orientation:error:](#)

*Sets a working area and orientation inside the virtual page.*
- (BOOL) - [pageFillRectangle:error:](#)

*Fills the current working area (or whole page if none is set) with the specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [pageFillRectangle:top:width:height:color:error:](#)

*Fills a rectangle inside the current working area with specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [pageRectangleFrame:top:width:height:framewidth:color:error:](#)

*Draws a rectangle frame inside the current working area with specified color.*
- (BOOL) - [tableIsSupported](#)

*Checks if the currently connected printer supports tables.*
- (BOOL) - [tableCreate:error:](#)

*Create a new table using custom flags.*
- (BOOL) - [tableCreate:](#)

*Create a new table using default settings - both horizontal and vertical borders around it.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddColumn:](#)

*Adds a new column using default settings - 12x24 font, plain, vertical border between the cells, left aligning.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddColumn:error:](#)

*Adds a new column using default settings - plain text, vertical border between the cells, left aligning.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddColumn:style:alignment:error:](#)

*Adds a new column using custom font and vertical border between the cells.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddColumn:style:alignment:flags:error:](#)

*Adds a new column.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddCell:error:](#)

*Adds a new cell using the font size and style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddCell:font:error:](#)

*Adds a new cell using the font style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddCell:font:style:error:](#)

*Adds a new cell using custom font size and style and aligning of the column that cell belongs to.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddCell:font:style:alignment:error:](#)

*Adds a new cell using custom font size and style and aligning.*
- (BOOL) - [tableAddDelimiter:](#)

*Adds aa horizontal black line to the entire row that separates it from the next.*
- (BOOL) - [tableSetRowHeight:error:](#)

*Sets the row height that will be used by default for new cells added.*
- (BOOL) - [tablePrint:](#)

*Prints current table or throws IllegalArgumentException if cell data cannot be fit into paper.*

## Class Methods

- (id) + [sharedDevice](#)

*Creates and initializes new class instance or returns already initialized one.*

## Properties

- `InputStream` \* [btInputStream](#)

*Bluetooth input stream, you can use it after connecting with `btConnect`.*

- `OutputStream` \* [btOutputStream](#)

*Bluetooth output stream, you can use it after connecting with `btConnect`.*

- `NSArray` \* [btConnectedDevices](#)

*Contains bluetooth addresses of the currently connected bluetooth devices or empty array if no connected devices are found.*

- `NSArray` \* [tcpConnectedDevices](#)

*Contains tcp addresses of the currently connected network devices or empty array if no connected devices are found.*

- `int` [uiDisplayWidth](#)

*Contains display width in pixels.*

- `int` [uiDisplayHeight](#)

*Contains display height in pixels.*

- `BOOL` [uiDisplayAtBottom](#)

*Contains display height in pixels.*

- `id` [delegate](#)

*Adds delegate to the class.*

- `NSMutableArray` \* [delegates](#)

*Provides a list of currently registered delegates.*

- `int` [connstate](#)

*Returns current connection state.*

- `NSString` \* [deviceName](#)

*Returns connected device name.*

- `NSString` \* [deviceModel](#)

*Returns connected device model.*

- `NSString` \* [firmwareRevision](#)

*Returns connected device firmware version.*

- `NSString` \* [hardwareRevision](#)

*Returns connected device hardware version.*

- `NSString` \* [serialNumber](#)

*Returns connected device serial number.*

- `int` [sdkVersion](#)

*SDK version number in format MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.*

- `NSDate` \* [sdkBuildDate](#)

*SDK build date.*

- `short` [emvLastStatus](#)

*EMV last status, one of the `EMV_*` constants.*

### 3.2.1 Detailed Description

Provides universal access to all supported devices' functions.

In order to use one of the supported accessories in your program, several steps have to be performed:

- Include DTDevices.h and libdtdev.a in your project.
- Go to Frameworks and add ExternalAccessory framework
- Edit your program plist file, add new element and select "Supported external accessory protocols" from the list, then add the protocol names of the accessories you want to connect to:  
For Linea series: com.datecs.linea.pro.msr and com.datecs.linea.pro.bar  
For Pinpad: com.datecs.iserial.communication and com.datecs.ppad  
For iSerial: com.datecs.iserial.communication  
For ESC/POS printers: com.datecs.printer.escpos

Since this SDK is based on features, the specific device is not that important, for example, if your program relies on barcode scanning, then Linea, Pinpad or the ESC/POS printers can provide that functionality, so you can include all their protocols.

### 3.2.2 Property Documentation

#### 3.2.2.1 -(int) sdkVersion [read],[atomic],[assign]

SDK version number in format MAJOR\*100+MINOR, i.e.

version 1.15 will be returned as 115

## 3.3 DTEMVApplication Class Reference

Provides information about EMV application.

Inherits NSObject.

### Properties

- NSData \* [aid](#)  
*Application AID.*
- NSString \* [label](#)  
*Application label.*
- int [matchCriteria](#)  
*How the application is matched to the ones in the card:*

### 3.3.1 Detailed Description

Provides information about EMV application.

### 3.3.2 Property Documentation

#### 3.3.2.1 -(int) matchCriteria [read],[write],[atomic],[assign]

How the application is matched to the ones in the card:

MATCH_FULL	Complete match
MATCH_PARTIAL_VISA	Partial Visa match
MATCH_PARTIAL_EUROPAY	Partial Europay match

## 3.4 DTKeyInfo Class Reference

Pinpad key information.

Inherits NSObject.

### Properties

- NSData \* [checkValue](#)  
*Key check value.*
- int [type](#)  
*Key type.*
- NSString \* [usage](#)  
*Key usage, according to TR31: Usage/Mode:*
- char [mode](#)  
*Key mode, according to TR31.*
- int [version](#)  
*Key version.*

### 3.4.1 Detailed Description

Pinpad key information.

### 3.4.2 Property Documentation

#### 3.4.2.1 -(NSString\*) [usage](#) [read],[write],[atomic],[assign]

Key usage, according to TR31: Usage/Mode:

'B0' 'N' Base Derivation Key

'P0' 'E' pin key 'M1' 'C' key for ISO 9797-1 MAC Algorithm 1 'M3' 'C' key for ISO 9797-1 MAC Algorithm 3 'M0' 'C' key for ISO 16609 MAC algorithm 1 'D0' 'E' key for data encrypting 'D0' 'D' key for data decrypting

Custom method usage vaules:

'01' transport key for pin key '02' transport key for ISO 9797-1 MAC Algorithm 1 key '03' transport key for ISO 9797-1 MAC Algorithm 3 key '04' transport key for ISO 16609 MAC algorithm 1 key '05' transport key for data encrypting key '06' transport key for data decrypting key

## 3.5 DTRFCardInfo Class Reference

Information about RF card.

Inherits NSObject.

## Properties

- int [type](#)  
*RF card type, one of the CARD\_\* constants.*
- NSString \* [typeStr](#)  
*RF card type as string, useful for display purposes.*
- NSData \* [UID](#)  
*RF card unique identifier, if any.*
- int [ATQA](#)  
*Mifare card ATQA.*
- int [SAK](#)  
*Mifare card SAK.*
- int [AFI](#)  
*ISO15693 card AFI.*
- int [DSFID](#)  
*ISO15693 card DSFID.*
- int [blockSize](#)  
*ISO15693 card block size.*
- int [nBlocks](#)  
*ISO15693 card number of blocks.*

### 3.5.1 Detailed Description

Information about RF card.

# Index

<DTDeviceDelegate>, [149](#)

addDelegate:

General functions, [18](#)

Barcode Reader Functions, [25](#)

barcodeCodeGetParam:value:error:, [26](#)

barcodeCodeSetParam:value:error:, [26](#)

barcodeCodeUpdateFirmware:data:error:, [26](#)

barcodeEngineResetToDefaults:, [27](#)

barcodeGetScanButtonMode:error:, [27](#)

barcodeGetScanMode:error:, [27](#)

barcodeGetTypeMode:error:, [28](#)

barcodeIntermecSetInitData:error:, [28](#)

barcodeOpticonGetIdent:, [28](#)

barcodeOpticonSetInitString:error:, [28](#)

barcodeOpticonSetParams:saveToFlash:error:, [29](#)  
barcodeOpticonUpdateFirmware:bootLoader-  
:error:, [29](#)

barcodeSetScanBeep:volume:beepData:length-  
:error:, [30](#)

barcodeSetScanButtonMode:error:, [30](#)

barcodeSetScanMode:error:, [30](#)

barcodeSetTypeMode:error:, [31](#)

barcodeStartScan:, [31](#)

barcodeStopScan:, [31](#)

barcodeType2Text:, [32](#)

barcodeCodeGetParam:value:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [26](#)

barcodeCodeSetParam:value:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [26](#)

barcodeCodeUpdateFirmware:data:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [26](#)

barcodeData:isotype:  
Delegate Notifications, [12](#)

barcodeData:type:  
Delegate Notifications, [12](#)

barcodeEngineResetToDefaults:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [27](#)

barcodeGetScanButtonMode:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [27](#)

barcodeGetScanMode:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [27](#)

barcodeGetTypeMode:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [28](#)

barcodeIntermecSetInitData:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [28](#)

barcodeOpticonGetIdent:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [28](#)

barcodeOpticonSetInitString:error:

Barcode Reader Functions, [28](#)

barcodeOpticonSetParams:saveToFlash:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [29](#)

barcodeOpticonUpdateFirmware:bootLoader:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [29](#)

barcodeSetScanBeep:volume:beepData:length:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [30](#)

barcodeSetScanButtonMode:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [30](#)

barcodeSetScanMode:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [30](#)

barcodeSetTypeMode:error:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [31](#)

barcodeStartScan:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [31](#)

barcodeStopScan:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [31](#)

barcodeType2Text:  
Barcode Reader Functions, [32](#)

Bluetooth Functions, [33](#)

btConnect:pin:error:, [34](#)

btConnectSupportedDevice:pin:error:, [34](#)

btDisconnect:error:, [34](#)

btDiscoverDevices:maxTime:codTypes:error:, [35](#)  
btDiscoverDevicesInBackground:maxTime:cod-  
Types:error:, [35](#)

btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:, [36](#)

btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:maxTime:error:,  
[36](#)

btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:, [36](#)

btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:maxTime:error:,  
[37](#)

btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground:max-  
Time:filter:error:, [37](#)

btEnableWriteCaching:error:, [37](#)

btGetDeviceName:error:, [38](#)

btInputStream, [40](#)

btOutputStream, [40](#)

btRead:length:timeout:error:, [38](#)

btReadLine:error:, [39](#)

btSetDataNotificationMaxTime:maxLength:sequence-  
Data:error:, [39](#)

btWrite:error:, [39](#)

btWrite:length:error:, [40](#)

bluetoothDeviceDiscovered:name:  
Delegate Notifications, [12](#)

bluetoothDiscoverComplete:  
Delegate Notifications, [12](#)

btConnect:pin:error:

- Bluetooth Functions, [34](#)
- btConnectSupportedDevice:pin:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [34](#)
- btDisconnect:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [34](#)
- btDiscoverDevices:maxTime:codTypes:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [35](#)
- btDiscoverDevicesInBackground:maxTime:codTypes:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [35](#)
- btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [36](#)
- btDiscoverPinpadsInBackground:maxTime:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [36](#)
- btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [36](#)
- btDiscoverPrintersInBackground:maxTime:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [37](#)
- btDiscoverSupportedDevicesInBackground:maxTime:filter:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [37](#)
- btEnableWriteCaching:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [37](#)
- btGetDeviceName:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [38](#)
- btInputStream
  - Bluetooth Functions, [40](#)
- btOutputStream
  - Bluetooth Functions, [40](#)
- btRead:length:timeout:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [38](#)
- btReadLine:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [39](#)
- btSetDataNotificationMaxTime:maxLength:sequenceData:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [39](#)
- btWrite:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [39](#)
- btWrite:length:error:
  - Bluetooth Functions, [40](#)
- CARD\_SUPPORT\_JEWEL
  - RF Reader Functions, [61](#)
- CARD\_SUPPORT\_NFC
  - RF Reader Functions, [61](#)
- connect
  - General functions, [19](#)
- connectionState:
  - Delegate Notifications, [12](#)
- cryptoAuthenticateDevice:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [47](#)
- cryptoAuthenticateHost:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [47](#)
- cryptoGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [48](#)
- cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [48](#)
- cryptoRawAuthenticateHost:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [48](#)
- cryptoRawGenerateRandomData:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [49](#)
- cryptoRawSetKey:encryptedData:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [49](#)
- cryptoSetKey:key:oldKey:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:
  - Cryptographic & Security Functions, [50](#)
- Cryptographic & Security Functions, [46](#)
  - cryptoAuthenticateDevice:error:, [47](#)
  - cryptoAuthenticateHost:error:, [47](#)
  - cryptoGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:, [48](#)
  - cryptoRawAuthenticateDevice:error:, [48](#)
  - cryptoRawAuthenticateHost:error:, [48](#)
  - cryptoRawGenerateRandomData:, [49](#)
  - cryptoRawSetKey:encryptedData:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:, [49](#)
  - cryptoSetKey:key:oldKey:keyVersion:keyFlags:error:, [50](#)
- DT\_EBUSY
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_ECLOSE
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_ECRC
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_ECREATE
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EDEVICE
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EEPROM
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EFLASH
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EGENERAL
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EINVALID\_CMD
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EIO
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EMEMORY
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EMSR\_ECARD
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EMSR\_EHARDWARE
  - Library Error Codes, [7](#)
- DT\_EMSR\_ENO\_DATA
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)
- DT\_EMSR\_ESYNTAX
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)
- DT\_EMSR\_ETAMPERED
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)
- DT\_ENOEXIST
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)
- DT\_ENOIMPLEMENTED
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)
- DT\_ENOMORE
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)
- DT\_ENONE
  - Library Error Codes, [8](#)



- DT\_ENOSUPPORTED
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_EOPEN
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_EPARAM
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_ETIMEOUT
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EACCESS
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EBASE
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EBIT
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_ECODE
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_ECOLLISION
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_ECRC
  - Library Error Codes, [9](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EEPROM
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EFIFO
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EFRAME
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EGENERIC
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EKEY
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EPARIITY
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_ETIMEOUT
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_MIFARE\_EVALUE
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DT\_PPAD\_ENO\_TMK
  - Library Error Codes, [10](#)
- DTDevices, [150](#)
  - sdkVersion, [160](#)
- DTEMVApplication, [160](#)
  - matchCriteria, [160](#)
- DTKeyInfo, [161](#)
  - usage, [161](#)
- DTRFCardInfo, [161](#)
- Data Access, [124](#)
  - emvGetDataAsBinary:error:, [124](#)
  - emvGetDataAsString:error:, [124](#)
  - emvGetDataDetails:tagType:maxLen:currentLen:error:, [125](#)
  - emvSetBypassMode:error:, [126](#)
  - emvSetDataAsBinary:data:error:, [126](#)
  - emvSetDataAsString:data:error:, [127](#)
- Delegate Notifications, [11](#)
  - barcodeData:isotype:, [12](#)
  - barcodeData:type:, [12](#)
  - bluetoothDeviceDiscovered:name:, [12](#)
  - bluetoothDiscoverComplete:, [12](#)
  - connectionState:, [12](#)
  - deviceButtonPressed:, [13](#)
  - deviceButtonReleased:, [13](#)
  - deviceFeatureSupported:value:, [13](#)
  - firmwareUpdateProgress:percent:, [13](#)
  - magneticCardData:track2:track3:, [14](#)
  - magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:, [14](#)
  - magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:track1masked-track2masked:track3:, [15](#)
  - magneticCardEncryptedRawData:data:, [16](#)
  - magneticCardRawData:, [16](#)
  - magneticJISCardData:, [17](#)
  - paperStatus:, [17](#)
  - rfCardDetected:info:, [17](#)
  - rfCardRemoved:, [17](#)
- deviceButtonPressed:
  - Delegate Notifications, [13](#)
- deviceButtonReleased:
  - Delegate Notifications, [13](#)
- deviceFeatureSupported:value:
  - Delegate Notifications, [13](#)
- EMV Kernel, [77](#)
- EMV Operation Workflow, [87](#)
- EMV Status Codes, [107](#)
- EMV TAGs, [95](#)
- emsrConfigMaskedDataShowExpiration:unmasked-DigitsAtStart:unmaskedDigitsAtEnd:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [54](#)
- emsrGetDUKPTSerial:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [54](#)
- emsrGetDeviceModel:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [54](#)
- emsrGetFirmwareInformation:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [55](#)
- emsrGetFirmwareVersion:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [55](#)
- emsrGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [55](#)
- emsrGetSecurityVersion:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [56](#)
- emsrGetSerialNumber:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [56](#)
- emsrGetSupportedEncryptions:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [56](#)
- emsrIsTampered:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [56](#)
- emsrLoadInitialKey:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [57](#)
- emsrLoadKey:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [57](#)
- emsrSetEncryption:params:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [58](#)
- emsrUpdateFirmware:error:
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [58](#)
- emvATRValidation:warmReset:error:
  - Transaction Start, [109](#)
- emvAuthenticateIssuer:
  - Issuer Authentication, [119](#)

- emvAuthentication:error:
  - Transaction Processing, [112](#)
- emvCheckTSIByte:bit:error:
  - General Commands, [121](#)
- emvCheckTVRByte:bit:error:
  - General Commands, [121](#)
- emvGenerateCertificate:risk:error:
  - Transaction Processing, [112](#)
- emvGetAuthenticationMethod:
  - Transaction Processing, [113](#)
- emvGetCommonAppList:error:
  - Transaction Start, [109](#)
- emvGetDataAsBinary:error:
  - Data Access, [124](#)
- emvGetDataAsString:error:
  - Data Access, [124](#)
- emvGetDataDetails:tagType:maxLength:currentLen:error:
  - Data Access, [125](#)
- emvInitialAppProcessing:error:
  - Transaction Processing, [114](#)
- emvLoadAppList:selectionMethod:includeBlockedAIDs-:error:
  - Transaction Start, [110](#)
- emvMakeDefaultDecision:
  - Transaction Processing, [114](#)
- emvMakeTransactionDecision:
  - Transaction Processing, [114](#)
- emvProcessRestrictions:
  - Transaction Processing, [115](#)
- emvReadAppData:error:
  - Transaction Processing, [115](#)
- emvRemovePublicKey:RID:error:
  - General Commands, [122](#)
- emvScriptProcessing:error:
  - Issuer Authentication, [119](#)
- emvSetAuthenticationResult:error:
  - Transaction Processing, [116](#)
- emvSetBypassMode:error:
  - Data Access, [126](#)
- emvSetDataAsBinary:data:error:
  - Data Access, [126](#)
- emvSetDataAsString:data:error:
  - Data Access, [127](#)
- emvTerminalRisk:error:
  - Transaction Processing, [117](#)
- emvUpdateTSIByte:bit:value:error:
  - General Commands, [122](#)
- emvUpdateTVRByte:bit:value:error:
  - General Commands, [123](#)
- emvVerifyPinOffline:
  - Transaction Processing, [117](#)
- Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, [52](#)
  - emsrConfigMaskedDataShowExpiration:unmasked-DigitsAtStart:unmaskedDigitsAtEnd:error:, [54](#)
  - emsrGetDUKPTSerial:, [54](#)
  - emsrGetDeviceModel:, [54](#)
  - emsrGetFirmwareInformation:error:, [55](#)
  - emsrGetFirmwareVersion:error:, [55](#)
  - emsrGetKeyVersion:keyVersion:error:, [55](#)
  - emsrGetSecurityVersion:error:, [56](#)
  - emsrGetSerialNumber:, [56](#)
  - emsrGetSupportedEncryptions:, [56](#)
  - emsrIsTampered:error:, [56](#)
  - emsrLoadInitialKey:error:, [57](#)
  - emsrLoadKey:error:, [57](#)
  - emsrSetEncryption:params:error:, [58](#)
  - emsrUpdateFirmware:error:, [58](#)
  - LN\_EMSR\_ECARD, [53](#)
  - LN\_EMSR\_EHARDWARE, [53](#)
  - LN\_EMSR\_ENO\_DATA, [53](#)
  - LN\_EMSR\_ESYNTAX, [53](#)
  - LN\_EMSR\_ETAMPERED, [54](#)
- extCloseSerialPort:error:
  - External Serial Port Functions, [42](#)
- extOpenSerialPort:baudRate:parity:dataBits:stopBits-:flowControl:error:
  - External Serial Port Functions, [42](#)
- extReadSerialPort:length:timeout:error:
  - External Serial Port Functions, [42](#)
- extWriteSerialPort:data:error:
  - External Serial Port Functions, [42](#)
- External Serial Port Functions, [41](#)
  - extCloseSerialPort:error:, [42](#)
  - extOpenSerialPort:baudRate:parity:dataBits:stop-Bits:flowControl:error:, [42](#)
  - extReadSerialPort:length:timeout:error:, [42](#)
  - extWriteSerialPort:data:error:, [42](#)
- felicaRead:startBlock:length:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [62](#)
- felicaSmartTagClearScreen:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [62](#)
- felicaSmartTagDisplayLayout:layout:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [62](#)
- felicaSmartTagDrawImage:image:topLeftX:topLeftY-:drawMode:layout:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [62](#)
- felicaSmartTagGetBatteryStatus:status:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [63](#)
- felicaSmartTagRead:address:length:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [63](#)
- felicaSmartTagSaveLayout:layout:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [63](#)
- felicaSmartTagWaitCompletion:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [64](#)
- felicaSmartTagWrite:address:data:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [64](#)
- felicaWrite:startBlock:data:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [64](#)
- firmwareUpdateProgress:percent:
  - Delegate Notifications, [13](#)
- General Commands, [121](#)
  - emvCheckTSIByte:bit:error:, [121](#)
  - emvCheckTVRByte:bit:error:, [121](#)
  - emvRemovePublicKey:RID:error:, [122](#)
  - emvUpdateTSIByte:bit:value:error:, [122](#)

- emvUpdateTVRByte:bit:value:error:, 123
- General functions, 18
  - addDelegate:, 18
  - connect, 19
  - getBatteryCapacity:voltage:error:, 19
  - getCharging:error:, 19
  - getFirmwareFileInformation:error:, 19
  - getSupportedFeature:error:, 20
  - playSound:beepData:length:error:, 20
  - removeDelegate:, 21
  - setActiveDeviceType:error:, 21
  - setCharging:error:, 21
  - sharedDevice, 22
  - updateFirmwareData:error:, 22
- getBatteryCapacity:voltage:error:
  - General functions, 19
- getCharging:error:
  - General functions, 19
- getFirmwareFileInformation:error:
  - General functions, 19
- getSupportedFeature:error:
  - General functions, 20
- iso15693GetBlocksSecurityStatus:startBlock:nBlocks-:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 65
- iso15693LockAFI:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 65
- iso15693LockBlock:block:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 65
- iso15693LockDSFID:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 66
- iso15693Read:startBlock:length:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 66
- iso15693Write:startBlock:data:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 66
- iso15693WriteAFI:afi:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 66
- iso15693WriteDSFID:dsfid:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 67
- Issuer Authentication, 119
  - emvAuthenticateIssuer:, 119
  - emvScriptProcessing:error:, 119
- LN\_EMSR\_ECARD
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, 53
- LN\_EMSR\_EHARDWARE
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, 53
- LN\_EMSR\_ENO\_DATA
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, 53
- LN\_EMSR\_ESYNTAX
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, 53
- LN\_EMSR\_ETAMPERED
  - Encrypted Magnetic Head Functions, 54
- Library Error Codes, 3
  - DT\_EBUSY, 7
  - DT\_ECLOSE, 7
  - DT\_ECRC, 7
  - DT\_ECREATE, 7
  - DT\_EDEVICE, 7
  - DT\_EEPROM, 7
  - DT\_EFLASH, 7
  - DT\_EGENERAL, 7
  - DT\_EINVALID\_CMD, 7
  - DT\_EIO, 7
  - DT\_EMEMORY, 7
  - DT\_EMSR\_ECARD, 7
  - DT\_EMSR\_EHARDWARE, 7
  - DT\_EMSR\_ENO\_DATA, 8
  - DT\_EMSR\_ESYNTAX, 8
  - DT\_EMSR\_ETAMPERED, 8
  - DT\_ENOEXIST, 8
  - DT\_ENOIMPLEMENTED, 8
  - DT\_ENOMORE, 8
  - DT\_ENONE, 8
  - DT\_ENOSUPPORTED, 9
  - DT\_EOPEN, 9
  - DT\_EPARAM, 9
  - DT\_ETIMEOUT, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EACCESS, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EBASE, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EBIT, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_ECODE, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_ECOLLISION, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_ECRC, 9
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EEEPROM, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EFIFO, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EFRAME, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EGENERIC, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EKEY, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EPARITY, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_ETIMEOUT, 10
  - DT\_MIFARE\_EVALUE, 10
  - DT\_PPAD\_ENO\_TMK, 10
- Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted), 23
  - msDisable:, 23
  - msEnable:, 23
  - msProcessFinancialCard:track2:, 23
  - msSetCardDataMode:error:, 24
- magneticCardData:track2:track3:
  - Delegate Notifications, 14
- magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:
  - Delegate Notifications, 14
- magneticCardEncryptedData:tracks:data:track1 masked-:track2masked:track3:
  - Delegate Notifications, 15
- magneticCardEncryptedRawData:data:
  - Delegate Notifications, 16
- magneticCardRawData:
  - Delegate Notifications, 16
- magneticJISCardData:
  - Delegate Notifications, 17
- matchCriteria
  - DTEMVApplication, 160
- mfAuthByKey:type:address:key:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 67
- mfAuthByStoredKey:type:address:keyIndex:error:

- RF Reader Functions, [67](#)
- mfRead:address:length:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [68](#)
- mfStoreKeyIndex:type:key:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [68](#)
- mfUlcAuthByKey:key:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [68](#)
- mfUlcSetKey:key:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [69](#)
- mfWrite:address:data:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, [69](#)
- msDisable:
  - Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted), [23](#)
- msEnable:
  - Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted), [23](#)
- msProcessFinancialCard:track2:
  - Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted), [23](#)
- msSetCardDataMode:error:
  - Magnetic Stripe Reader Functions (Unencrypted), [24](#)
- pageEnd:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [140](#)
- pageFillRectangle:error:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [140](#)
- pageFillRectangle:top:width:height:color:error:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [141](#)
- pagePrint:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [141](#)
- pageRectangleFrame:top:width:height:framewidth:color:error:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [141](#)
- pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:error:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [142](#)
- pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:orientation:error:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [142](#)
- pageStart:
  - Printing Page Mode Functions, [142](#)
- paperStatus:
  - Delegate Notifications, [17](#)
- pinGetPINBlockUsingDUKPT:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:
  - Pinpad functions, [74](#)
- Pinpad functions, [74](#)
- pinGetPINBlockUsingDUKPT:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:, [74](#)
- ppadCancelPINEntry:, [74](#)
- ppadGetKeyInfo:error:, [75](#)
- ppadGetPINBlockUsingFixedKey:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:, [75](#)
- ppadMagneticCardEntry:timeout:error:, [75](#)
- ppadSetButtonCaption:caption:error:, [76](#)
- ppadStartPINEntry:startY:timeout:echoChar:message:error:, [76](#)
- playSound:beepData:length:error:
  - General functions, [20](#)
- ppadCancelPINEntry:
  - Pinpad functions, [74](#)
- ppadGetKeyInfo:error:
  - Pinpad functions, [75](#)
- ppadGetPINBlockUsingFixedKey:keyVariant:pinFormat:error:
  - Pinpad functions, [75](#)
- ppadMagneticCardEntry:timeout:error:
  - Pinpad functions, [75](#)
- ppadSetButtonCaption:caption:error:
  - Pinpad functions, [76](#)
- ppadStartPINEntry:startY:timeout:echoChar:message:error:
  - Pinpad functions, [76](#)
- Printing functions, [132](#)
- prnCalibrateBlackMark:error:, [133](#)
- prnFeedPaper:error:, [133](#)
- prnFlushCache:, [133](#)
- prnGetBlackMarkTreshold:error:, [134](#)
- prnGetPrinterStatus:error:, [134](#)
- prnLoadLogo:align:error:, [134](#)
- prnPrintBarcode:barcode:error:, [134](#)
- prnPrintDelimiter:error:, [135](#)
- prnPrintImage:align:error:, [135](#)
- prnPrintLogo:error:, [135](#)
- prnPrintText:error:, [135](#)
- prnPrintText:usingEncoding:error:, [136](#)
- prnSelfTest:error:, [137](#)
- prnSetBarcodeSettings:height:hriPosition:align:error:, [138](#)
- prnSetBlackMarkTreshold:error:, [138](#)
- prnSetDensity:error:, [138](#)
- prnSetLeftMargin:error:, [138](#)
- prnSetLineSpace:error:, [139](#)
- prnTurnOff:, [139](#)
- prnWaitPrintJob:error:, [139](#)
- Printing Page Mode Functions, [140](#)
- pageEnd:, [140](#)
- pageFillRectangle:error:, [140](#)
- pageFillRectangle:top:width:height:color:error:, [141](#)
- pagePrint:, [141](#)
- pageRectangleFrame:top:width:height:framewidth:color:error:, [141](#)
- pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:error:, [142](#)
- pageSetWorkingArea:top:width:height:orientation:error:, [142](#)
- pageStart:, [142](#)
- Printing Table Functions, [143](#)
- tableAddCell:error:, [143](#)
- tableAddCell:font:error:, [144](#)
- tableAddCell:font:style:alignment:error:, [144](#)
- tableAddCell:font:style:error:, [144](#)
- tableAddColumn:, [144](#)
- tableAddColumn:error:, [145](#)
- tableAddColumn:style:alignment:error:, [145](#)
- tableAddColumn:style:alignment:flags:error:, [145](#)
- tableAddDelimiter:, [145](#)

- tableCreate:, 146
- tableCreate:error:, 146
- tableIsSupported, 146
- tablePrint:, 146
- tableSetRowHeight:error:, 147
- prnCalibrateBlackMark:error:
  - Printing functions, 133
- prnFeedPaper:error:
  - Printing functions, 133
- prnFlushCache:
  - Printing functions, 133
- prnGetBlackMarkTreshold:error:
  - Printing functions, 134
- prnGetPrinterStatus:error:
  - Printing functions, 134
- prnLoadLogo:align:error:
  - Printing functions, 134
- prnPrintBarcode:barcode:error:
  - Printing functions, 134
- prnPrintDelimiter:error:
  - Printing functions, 135
- prnPrintImage:align:error:
  - Printing functions, 135
- prnPrintLogo:error:
  - Printing functions, 135
- prnPrintText:error:
  - Printing functions, 135
- prnPrintText:usingEncoding:error:
  - Printing functions, 136
- prnSelfTest:error:
  - Printing functions, 137
- prnSetBarcodeSettings:height:hriPosition:align:error:
  - Printing functions, 138
- prnSetBlackMarkTreshold:error:
  - Printing functions, 138
- prnSetDensity:error:
  - Printing functions, 138
- prnSetLeftMargin:error:
  - Printing functions, 138
- prnSetLineSpace:error:
  - Printing functions, 139
- prnTurnOff:
  - Printing functions, 139
- prnWaitPrintJob:error:
  - Printing functions, 139
- RF Reader Functions, 60
  - CARD\_SUPPORT\_JEWEL, 61
  - CARD\_SUPPORT\_NFC, 61
  - felicaRead:startBlock:length:error:, 62
  - felicaSmartTagClearScreen:error:, 62
  - felicaSmartTagDisplayLayout:layout:error:, 62
  - felicaSmartTagDrawImage:image:topLeftX:topLeftY:drawMode:layout:error:, 62
  - felicaSmartTagGetBatteryStatus:status:error:, 63
  - felicaSmartTagRead:address:length:error:, 63
  - felicaSmartTagSaveLayout:layout:error:, 63
  - felicaSmartTagWaitCompletion:error:, 64
  - felicaSmartTagWrite:address:data:error:, 64
  - felicaWrite:startBlock:data:error:, 64
  - iso15693GetBlocksSecurityStatus:startBlock:nBlocks:error:, 65
  - iso15693LockAFI:error:, 65
  - iso15693LockBlock:block:error:, 65
  - iso15693LockDSFID:error:, 66
  - iso15693Read:startBlock:length:error:, 66
  - iso15693Write:startBlock:data:error:, 66
  - iso15693WriteAFI:afi:error:, 66
  - iso15693WriteDSFID:dsfid:error:, 67
  - mfAuthByKey:type:address:key:error:, 67
  - mfAuthByStoredKey:type:address:keyIndex:error:, 67
  - mfRead:address:length:error:, 68
  - mfStoreKeyIndex:type:key:error:, 68
  - mfUlcAuthByKey:key:error:, 68
  - mfUlcSetKey:key:error:, 69
  - mfWrite:address:data:error:, 69
  - rfClose:, 69
  - rfInit:error:, 70
  - rfRemoveCard:error:, 70
- removeDelegate:
  - General functions, 21
- rfCardDetected:info:
  - Delegate Notifications, 17
- rfCardRemoved:
  - Delegate Notifications, 17
- rfClose:
  - RF Reader Functions, 69
- rfInit:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 70
- rfRemoveCard:error:
  - RF Reader Functions, 70
- scCAPDU:apdu:error:
  - SmartCard Functions, 71
- scCardPowerOff:error:
  - SmartCard Functions, 71
- scCardPowerOn:error:
  - SmartCard Functions, 72
- scClose:error:
  - SmartCard Functions, 72
- scInit:error:
  - SmartCard Functions, 72
- sclsCardPresent:error:
  - SmartCard Functions, 73
- sdkVersion
  - DTDevices, 160
- setActiveDeviceType:error:
  - General functions, 21
- setCharging:error:
  - General functions, 21
- sharedDevice
  - General functions, 22
- SmartCard Functions, 71
  - scCAPDU:apdu:error:, 71
  - scCardPowerOff:error:, 71
  - scCardPowerOn:error:, 72
  - scClose:error:, 72

- sclInit:error:, [72](#)
  - sclsCardPresent:error:, [73](#)
- TCP/IP Functions, [44](#)
  - tcpConnectSupportedDevice:error:, [44](#)
  - tcpDisconnect:error:, [44](#)
- tableAddCell:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [143](#)
- tableAddCell:font:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [144](#)
- tableAddCell:font:style:alignment:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [144](#)
- tableAddCell:font:style:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [144](#)
- tableAddColumn:
  - Printing Table Functions, [144](#)
- tableAddColumn:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [145](#)
- tableAddColumn:style:alignment:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [145](#)
- tableAddColumn:style:alignment:flags:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [145](#)
- tableAddDelimiter:
  - Printing Table Functions, [145](#)
- tableCreate:
  - Printing Table Functions, [146](#)
- tableCreate:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [146](#)
- tableIsSupported
  - Printing Table Functions, [146](#)
- tablePrint:
  - Printing Table Functions, [146](#)
- tableSetRowHeight:error:
  - Printing Table Functions, [147](#)
- tcpConnectSupportedDevice:error:
  - TCP/IP Functions, [44](#)
- tcpDisconnect:error:
  - TCP/IP Functions, [44](#)
- Transaction Processing, [111](#)
  - emvAuthentication:error:, [112](#)
  - emvGenerateCertificate:risk:error:, [112](#)
  - emvGetAuthenticationMethod:, [113](#)
  - emvInitialAppProcessing:error:, [114](#)
  - emvMakeDefaultDecision:, [114](#)
  - emvMakeTransactionDecision:, [114](#)
  - emvProcessRestrictions:, [115](#)
  - emvReadAppData:error:, [115](#)
  - emvSetAuthenticationResult:error:, [116](#)
  - emvTerminalRisk:error:, [117](#)
  - emvVerifyPinOffline:, [117](#)
- Transaction Start, [109](#)
  - emvATRValidation:warmReset:error:, [109](#)
  - emvGetCommonAppList:error:, [109](#)
  - emvLoadAppList:selectionMethod:includeBlocked-AIDs:error:, [110](#)
- uiControlLEDsWithBitMask:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [128](#)
- uiDisplayImage:topLeftY:image:error:
- User Interface Functions, [129](#)
- uiDrawText:topLeftX:topLeftY:font:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [129](#)
- uiEnableVibrationForTime:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [129](#)
- uiFillRectangle:topLeftY:width:height:color:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [130](#)
- uiGetScreenInfoWidth:height:colorMode:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [130](#)
- uiPutPixel:y:color:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [130](#)
- uiSetContrast:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [130](#)
- uiStartAnimation:topLeftX:topLeftY:animated:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [131](#)
- uiStopAnimation:error:
  - User Interface Functions, [131](#)
- updateFirmwareData:error:
  - General functions, [22](#)
- usage
  - DTKeyInfo, [161](#)
- User Interface Functions, [128](#)
  - uiControlLEDsWithBitMask:error:, [128](#)
  - uiDisplayImage:topLeftY:image:error:, [129](#)
  - uiDrawText:topLeftX:topLeftY:font:error:, [129](#)
  - uiEnableVibrationForTime:error:, [129](#)
  - uiFillRectangle:topLeftY:width:height:color:error:, [130](#)
  - uiGetScreenInfoWidth:height:colorMode:error:, [130](#)
  - uiPutPixel:y:color:error:, [130](#)
  - uiSetContrast:error:, [130](#)
  - uiStartAnimation:topLeftX:topLeftY:animated:error-:, [131](#)
  - uiStopAnimation:error:, [131](#)